

913.773  
Cah

*E. Mcgraw*  
*Dec 1937*

# UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS BULLETIN

ISSUED WEEKLY

VOL. XXVI

SEPTEMBER 25, 1928

No. 4

[Entered as second-class matter December 11, 1912, at the post office at Urbana, Illinois, under the Act of August 24, 1912. Accepted for mailing at the special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized July 31, 1918.]

## The Cahokia Mounds

Includes observations printed in Vols. XIX, No. 35, and XXI, No. 6,  
together with additional data from subsequent explorations.

---

### PART I

Explorations of 1922, 1923, 1924, and 1927

BY

WARREN K. MOOREHEAD

Mound Technique

BY

JAY L. B. TAYLOR

---

### PART II

Some Geological Aspects

BY

MORRIS M. LEIGHTON

The Use of Molluscan Shells by the Cahokia Mound Builders

BY

FRANK C. BAKER





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2014



# The Cahokia Mounds

Includes observations printed in Vols. XIX, No. 35, and XXI, No. 6,  
together with additional data from subsequent explorations.

---

## PART I

Explorations of 1922, 1923, 1924, and 1927

BY

WARREN K. MOOREHEAD

Mound Technique

BY

JAY L. B. TAYLOR

---

## PART II

Some Geological Aspects

BY

MORRIS M. LEIGHTON

The Use of Molluscan Shells by the Cahokia Mound Builders

BY

FRANK C. BAKER

COPYRIGHT, 1929  
BY THE UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS  
DISTRIBUTED 1929

## PREFACE

*It has been thought best to include in this report on the investigation and study of the Cahokia Mounds two previous reports which were issued as parts of the University of Illinois Bulletin Series. These are Volume XIX, No. 35, (1922), and Volume XXI, No. 6, (1923). Changes have been made in both texts. In reprinting Bulletin No. 35, certain prefatory remarks are omitted. Particularly does this apply to institutions and individuals who kindly contributed toward the initial exploration, before the University of Illinois assumed responsibility for the work.*<sup>1</sup>

*There is added the exploration of 1923, and also extensive work on the Harding Mound (No. 66) which was performed between the first of April and August, 1927.*

*We are particularly indebted to Dr. David Kinley, President of the University of Illinois, the Board of Trustees, and other officials of the University for coöperation and support during these several expeditions. Mr. Frank C. Baker, Curator of the Museum of Natural History of the University of Illinois, has also rendered valuable assistance in the study of artifacts and the identification of shells. We include a paper by him in this report.*

*The last season's work at Cahokia (1927) was confined to the Harding Mound (No. 66) and the adjacent mound lying to the east (No. 65). Then the survey examined tumuli along the Illinois River near Havana.*

*Both No. 65 and No. 66, as well as some lesser tumuli, are now owned by the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad and will soon be destroyed. Thanks are due to Mr. H. B. Voorhees and officers of the Railroad who courteously gave the University permission to conduct the exploration of this mound, and acknowledgment is hereby made of their helpfulness. Articles found in the mound are labeled in the University Museum as having been found on the property of the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad.*

*In previous years the survey was permitted by the heirs of Mr. Thomas Ramey to carry on extensive excavations on their property. The Ramey family owned something more than half of the mounds comprising the main Cahokia group in Madison*

---

<sup>1</sup>These were all thanked at some length in the preface.

*and St. Clair counties. We are especially indebted to the Misses and Messrs. Ramey for their many kindnesses, coöperation, and good will which they frequently extended to the members of our expedition during those years. Adjoining the Ramey lands to the north, west, and south lie the extensive acres owned by Mr. George R. Merrell of St. Louis. He also permitted research on his property, as did other proprietors: Messrs. J. H. Edwards, John Smith, Ernest Cole, and Mrs. William Tippetts.*

*It is most fortunate that these explorations were undertaken before the State Park was established, because certain tracts have changed ownership and numbers of buildings of various kinds have been erected along the State Highway, which might interfere with permissions to excavate.*

*Since the previous reports were published, two of the members of the expeditions have died: Clinton Cowen, Civil Engineer, and Hon. W. E. Myer, an authority on arts of the Southern Indians. Both rendered valuable service at Cahokia.*

*We especially wish to thank Dr. Morris M. Leighton, Chief of the Illinois Geological Survey, for his studies of the geology of the region, Dr. Harold R. Wanless of the Department of Geology of the University of Illinois, Dr. A. R. Crook, Chief of the State Museum at Springfield; Dr. Otto L. Schmidt, President of the Illinois Historical Society; W. J. Seever, Esq., of Webster Groves, Mo., for generous assistance. Mr. Seever frequently placed his car at our disposal and spent considerable time with the surveys. Others who have rendered much help were A. J. Throop, Esq., of East St. Louis; the late Dr. H. M. Whelpley, of St. Louis; and Dr. R. J. Terry, of Washington University, who kindly made some studies of such osteological material as we were able to preserve.*

*Dr. Thomas H. English of Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia, has long been a student of Cahokia literature. He revised our bibliography and added a number of titles. We are greatly indebted to Dr. English.*

*In the explorations along the Illinois River, we were greatly helped by Dr. Don Dickson, who has established a museum a few miles out of Lewistown. All his material was placed at our disposal. Mr. Russell T. Neville made photographs of Dr. Dickson's skeletons, for which we thank him.*

*Mrs. Anna Neteler of Havana, Mr. L. A. England, and Mr. O. F. Pfetzing, Chairman of the Chautauqua Board, all permitted explorations. We desire to thank them sincerely.*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I

	PAGE
Historical Setting and General Description.....	9
Looking Down from the Summit of Monks Mound in 1927...	13
Approximate Number of Mounds in the Group.....	13
Maps and Descriptions of Cahokia.....	14
Monks Mound.....	15
Ponds and Depressions.....	23
The Village Site.....	25
Exploration of Certain Mounds During the Various Seasons.....	33
The Kunnemann Mound.....	34
Schmidt's Mound.....	36
The Edwards Mounds.....	37
No. 76, Jesse Ramey Mound.....	37
Mound No. 64.....	38
The Sawmill Mound, No. 39.....	38
Mounds Nos. 19, 20, and 21.....	41
The James Ramey Mound, No. 33.....	44
The Jondro Mound, No. 83.....	51
Sam Chucallo Mound.....	53
Pittsburg Lake Cemetery.....	54
Mounds Nos. 14 and 84.....	55
Sullivan's Mounds.....	56
The Kruger Bone Bank.....	58
Mrs. Tippetts' Mound, No. 61.....	58
The Collinsville-Edgemont Bluffs.....	58
The Mitchell Mounds.....	59
Wood River Mounds.....	62
Mounds at Lebanon, Illinois.....	64
Examination of Harding Mound, No. 66.....	65
Mound No. 65.....	81
Mound No. 64.....	83
The Powell Mound.....	84
The Two Low Mounds West of No. 66.....	84
Orientation of the Cahokia Mounds.....	86
The Use of Copper in the Cahokia Region.....	90
Notes on Cahokia Skeletons.....	94
Previous Work and Collections Relating to the Cahokia Group.....	96
Specimens from Cahokia.....	98
Cahokia Pottery.....	100
General Observations on the Cahokia Group.....	101

## PART II

	PAGE
Introduction .....	III
The Problem.....	III
Acknowledgments.....	III
Former Opinions of Geologists Regarding the Origin of the Mounds.....	II2
General Description of the Mounds .....	II6
Number, Size, and Shape.....	II6
Monks Mound .....	II7
Arrangement of the Mounds.....	II7
The Geological Setting of the Mounds.....	I20
Topographic Position.....	I20
The Alluvial Filling.....	I21
Remnants of the Original Glacial Filling.....	I22
Post-Glacial Conditions .....	I23
Bearing upon the Age and Origin of the Cahokia Mounds....	I24
Constitution of the Mounds.....	I25
The James Ramey Mound, No. 33.....	I25
The Albert Kunnemann Mound, No. 16.....	I33
The Sam Chucallo Mound.....	I35
The Sawmill Mound, No. 39.....	I36
Auger Borings on Monks Mound.....	I36
Comparison with the Materials of the East Valley Bluff....	I39
Summary of the Evidence and Conclusions.....	I42

## APPENDICES

Appendix A—The Use of Molluscan Shells by the Cahokia Mound Builders.....	I47
Fresh Water Mollusca.....	I47
Mussel Shells Probably Obtained Mainly from the Mississippi River.....	I47
Snail Shells.....	I49
Marine Mollusca .....	I50
Comparison with Hopewell Mounds of Ohio.....	I52
Fresh Water Mussels from Mound No. 5.....	I53
Appendix B—Some Researches in the Illinois River Valley Near Havana .....	I55
The Havana Tumuli.....	I55
The Liverpool Group.....	I57
Other Mounds.....	I58
Examination of Mounds.....	I58
General Conclusions.....	I65
Appendix C—The Dickson Mound and the Log Tomb Burials at Liverpool .....	I67
The "Log Tomb" Mounds at Liverpool.....	I68
Appendix D—Cahokia Bibliography .....	I71
Illustrations.....	I78-273

# THE CAHOKIA MOUNDS

## PART I

### EXPLORATIONS OF 1922, 1924, AND 1927

BY

WARREN K. MOOREHEAD

Curator, Department of Archæology, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.  
Director, Archæological Survey of the Cahokia Region  
for the University of Illinois

### MOUND TECHNIQUE

BY

JAY L. B. TAYLOR



## HISTORICAL SETTING AND GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Flanking the Mississippi River, and extending from the mouth of the Ohio to near Quincy, Illinois, is a long stretch of exceedingly fertile lowland. When the first English-speaking settlers came in and occupied what was formerly French territory, they gave the name American Bottoms to a large tract of land lying across the river from the city of St. Louis. At that time there was no East St. Louis, and the few hamlets, outside of St. Louis proper, near the river on the west bank as well as those towards the southeast, were composed of French inhabitants. The area specified in the term American Bottoms is somewhat indefinite, yet so far as we have been able to ascertain, it was applied to a territory extending from near the mouth of Wood River, where Lewis and Clark had their winter camp in 1804, down to a few miles below where Cahokia Creek joins the Mississippi. Many of the early writers and travellers speak enthusiastically of the natural beauty of this plain. Indeed, its attractive features belong to the past. Certainly in its present appearance it presents little or nothing to arouse sentiment in the breast of any lover of nature or beauty, for, as Kipling would put it, it has become "manhandled."

Researches in the libraries leads one to assume that the earliest French explorers paid no attention to the Cahokia Mounds. Tonti's journal, which was published in London in 1698 and is entitled "an account of de La Salle's last expedition," refers in a number of places to the Indians and their houses, and also to the personal appearance and garments of these people, yet his description is confined to villages along the Illinois River. If the Indians seen by Tonti, La Salle, or others, in the Cahokia region, built mounds or set cabins on mounds, the obvious conclusion is that these careful observers would have referred to that fact. The main village on the Illinois (at the present time the site of Utica, La Salle County) was some two hundred miles north of Cahokia and contained a large population. Yet the evidences of occupation are far less extensive than those left at Cahokia. This is beyond question, and nobody who has examined the full evidence can deny it. Further, this feature has always appeared to the writer to be very significant. Why? Because had the Cahokia group village been

inhabited at that time, La Salle or others most certainly would have visited it. They came clear from Quebec to the Illinois village and Cahokia presents a much more extensive settlement. The answer? Quite simple. Our site was not inhabited then and is strictly prehistoric.

Coming down to later times, quite likely some of the members of the Lewis and Clark expedition, during their several months' stay at the mouth of Wood River, may have crossed the American Bottoms and undoubtedly they saw the mounds, yet there appears to be no mention of these monuments in the Lewis and Clark journals.

Reference to the bibliography will indicate that there are not a few writers who visited Cahokia in early times. We should be very grateful to some of these men because the setting today is absolutely different from that presented by Brackenridge, Rau, and others of long ago. The city of East St. Louis has gradually extended and grown until its suburbs include some of the most westerly mounds of the group. Even as late as 1921, at the time of our preliminary inspection, there were few buildings along the State Highway east of the Powell Mounds (which are about two miles directly west of Monks Mound). Within the short space of six years, there has been extensive construction all along the macadam road between this point and the Edwards Mounds, east of Monks Mound. Not only have many bungalows and filling stations been erected, but there are also two large enclosures, the one where patrons of horse-racing assemble, and the other where greyhound races are held throughout the summer and fall seasons.

At the time Dr. Rau, of the Smithsonian Institution, visited Cahokia in 1860, there was no East St. Louis proper, the site was practically undisturbed, and indications of ancient Indian villages covered the ground from a point far up Cahokia and Canteen creeks fully a mile east of Monks Mound, westward over six miles to the junction of Cahokia Creek and the Mississippi. This has since been verified by our many test pits.

During the past century there has been extensive archaeological exploration in the territory lying between the Mexican frontier and the St. Lawrence basin. The net result of this work, on the part of many institutions and individuals, is very important, yet I am not aware that it has produced a village six or more miles in extent.



inhabited at that time, La Salle or others most certainly would have visited it. They came clear from Quebec to the Illinois village and Cahokia presents a much more extensive settlement. The answer? Quite simple. Our site was not inhabited then and is strictly prehistoric.

Coming down to later times, quite likely some of the members of the Lewis and Clark expedition, during their several months' stay at the mouth of Wood River, may have crossed the American Bottoms and undoubtedly they saw the mounds, yet there appears to be no mention of these monuments in the Lewis and Clark journals.

Reference to the bibliography will indicate that there are not a few writers who visited Cahokia in early times. We should be very grateful to some of these men because the setting today is absolutely different from that presented by Brackenridge, Rau, and others of long ago. The city of East St. Louis has gradually extended and grown until its suburbs include some of the most westerly mounds of the group. Even as late as 1921, at the time of our preliminary inspection, there were few buildings along the State Highway east of the Powell Mounds (which are about two miles directly west of Monks Mound). Within the short space of six years, there has been extensive construction all along the macadam road between this point and the Edwards Mounds, east of Monks Mound. Not only have many bungalows and filling stations been erected, but there are also two large enclosures, the one where patrons of horse-racing assemble, and the other where greyhound races are held throughout the summer and fall seasons.

At the time Dr. Rau, of the Smithsonian Institution, visited Cahokia in 1860, there was no East St. Louis proper, the site was practically undisturbed, and indications of ancient Indian villages covered the ground from a point far up Cahokia and Canteen creeks fully a mile east of Monks Mound, westward over six miles to the junction of Cahokia Creek and the Mississippi. This has since been verified by our many test pits.

During the past century there has been extensive archaeological exploration in the territory lying between the Mexican frontier and the St. Lawrence basin. The net result of this work, on the part of many institutions and individuals, is very important, yet I am not aware that it has produced a village six or more miles in extent.





FIGURE 1  
 Reproduction of the map drawn by J. J. R. Patrick about 1880. From Van Court's and Seever's survey.



On the east side of the Mississippi this flood plain, already mentioned, varies in width from two to five or six miles. A line of high bluffs ninety to one hundred twenty feet in altitude parallels this plain. From below French Village, the bluffs in early historic times were dotted with mounds and other evidences of Indian occupation. Many of the tumuli have disappeared. Others are more or less effaced, yet a sufficient number remain to afford students a conception of the enormous extent of aboriginal occupation throughout this area. We use the word "enormous" advisedly.

The Cahokia group of mounds lies on either side of a creek of the same name. The most easterly of the tumuli forming this group are approximately one and one-half miles out toward the west from the foot of the Collinsville bluff. An air line from this point to the mouth of the Cahokia Creek would be approximately seven miles in length. Following the contours of the creek the distance might be extended to nine miles.

The dominant monument, around which all the others center, is the great Cahokia Mound. Since we have applied the term "Cahokia Group" to the entire setting, No. 38 on the official map, Fig. 1, will hereafter be known by its local name of Monks Mound.

In the year 1921 we stood on the summit of this eastern pyramid and looked out across the famous American Bottoms. We were one hundred feet above the plain and because at that time there were no buildings or amusement parks nearby, our vision was not impaired. Both the site and the view were conducive to reflection on the past, and one's mind naturally harked back to the days of Brackenridge, Flagg, Rau, and Featherstonhaugh,—for these men saw Cahokia at its best.

Fortunate indeed is it that these pioneers in Cahokia archaeology gave us clear word pictures of conditions then, for while practically all of the tumuli remain, their external contour is altered. After these pioneers came McAdams, Patrick, Putnam, Fowke, Bushnell, and others who mapped and described the mounds as they saw them in the years from 1874 to 1905.

Notwithstanding the preëminence of Cahokia over all other mound groups in the United States, there appears to have been little attempt at either study or exploration. Indeed, the several gentlemen who visited the mounds between the years 1874 and 1905 contented themselves with brief descriptions. Previous

to 1922 the longest published account is the paper by Mr. D. I. Bushnell, Jr.<sup>1</sup>

Mr. W. W. McAdams, who was curator of the State Museum at Springfield, and Dr. J. J. R. Patrick seem to have excavated to a considerable extent in the cemetery northeast of the largest mound, yet, we are unable to find any detailed record of their observations.

After reading all the references to Cahokia we consulted with witnesses, who were present during McAdams's explorations, and also with persons living in the vicinity who had more or less knowledge of conditions at Cahokia during the past fifty years. After one has examined the assembled evidence, both written and spoken, it is not difficult to explain the reason no prior exploration of these famous mounds was undertaken.

Most attention seems to have been concentrated on Monks Mound. In fact, nearly all the descriptions center on this ranking structure. Mr. Thomas Ramey, the father of the present eight Ramey heirs, was probably the first owner of Cahokia property to manifest a real interest in the preservation of the mounds. This does not indicate that other owners today do not appreciate the importance of the group. On the contrary, our statement refers to the past—a period from about 1868 to 1890. Although Ramey employed some coal miners from Collinsville and ran a short tunnel into the mound, and also permitted one or two excavations in mounds south of Monks, yet on the whole he was adverse to excavations. From the time of his death his heirs, the Misses and Messrs. Ramey, had refused permission to those who sought to excavate. This also applies to Mr. George B. Merrell and his family, and other owners. In view of subsequent events, it would now appear that these owners wished explorations to "lead up to" or culminate in a movement to secure a State Park, which would preserve for all time the Cahokia Mounds. The present state-owned tract of some one hundred forty-three acres is due to the efforts of many persons and societies, but especially to the labors of the University of Illinois expeditions.

There is even a more potent reason why the mounds have not been examined. The undertaking would be very expensive. Until recent years, no museum or institution spent large sums

<sup>1</sup>Peabody Museum Report; 20 pages, 7 figures, and 5 plates.

of money in American archæology excepting, perhaps, in Central and South America. Undoubtedly it would require ten or fifteen years to properly explore the whole Cahokia group and a large force of labor would be required.

#### LOOKING DOWN FROM THE SUMMIT OF MONKS MOUND IN 1927

As we have observed, it was only six years ago when we stood upon the summit of that most massive pyramid north of central Mexico. Then one's view was not fully obstructed. Again, in 1927, we occupy the same vantage-point. In all directions, save towards the south, we observed the persistent encroachment of factories, railways, and buildings. Except in the small central area preserved as a State Park, the charm and primitive simplicity of the American Bottoms observed by Bushnell, as late as 1903, are things of the past. It is not our purpose to enter into a lengthy discussion of either the changes at Cahokia or their causes, yet one recommendation seems essential.

In archæological research it is much easier to secure permission for explorations from an institution or single owner rather than from many persons. The reasons are quite obvious. It is understood that the various owners contemplate dividing the Cahokia Mound group into small tracts and selling these to various purchasers. No one questions the right of the owners, but such action will inevitably result in the destruction of many of the mounds. Certainly it will render difficult their exploration. In view of this danger, it might not be inappropriate to here suggest, in the interests of science, that the State of Illinois, through its legislature, be earnestly petitioned to purchase certain tracts lying to the east, west, and south of the State Park. Otherwise, these remarkable tumuli will become lost to both the public and to science forever.

#### APPROXIMATE NUMBER OF MOUNDS IN THE GROUP

Our official map (Fig. 1) presents eighty-five tumuli in the Cahokia group proper. The surveys have spent a total of more than sixteen months at Cahokia. Notwithstanding many inspections of the entire plain, we are not prepared to definitely state what should be included under the term Cahokia. One impression is to the effect that the term should be applied to all monu-

ments embraced within a circle seven miles in diameter and having as its center Monks Mound. Other observers have thought that the Cahokia culture extends about nine miles east and west and fifteen miles north and south. Inside the seven-mile circle Mr. Taylor believes that there were originally about one hundred fifty elevations or mounds. Indeed the field evidence would indicate that the term Cahokia should include mounds of the Mitchell group to the north and embrace all structures lying between Mitchell and the mouth of Cahokia Creek. Within such a boundary there must have been, originally, more than two hundred (or possibly three hundred) elevations of mound-like character. Jay L. B. Taylor, Esq., the engineer who had charge of the work last year at Cahokia, examined the ground rather carefully and it is his opinion that there should be a resurvey of the tract before further destruction is caused by real estate development.<sup>2</sup> It is essential, Mr. Taylor maintains, that a new and more accurate survey of the entire group be put into effect.

Mr. Bushnell, in his excellent report, already referred to, mentions many mound groups in the general region, and also a number across the Mississippi on the Missouri side, which were destroyed as St. Louis extended its borders. One must continually bear in mind, in archæological studies, the extensive changes which have taken place in Madison and St. Clair counties since Indian times. Many low elevations now long ago clearly defined as mounds have disappeared.

When one looks out upon the American Bottoms from the summit of Monks Mound one observes many elevations, oblong in form, rather gentle in outline, which were originally either conical mounds or distinctly pyramidal in form.

#### MAPS AND DESCRIPTIONS OF CAHOKIA

There have been several attempts to map these mounds, but the most satisfactory result appears to be the survey made by County Surveyor Hilgard under the direction of Dr. J. J. R. Patrick, assisted by B. J. Van Court of O'Fallon, Illinois, and William J. Seever, now a resident of Webster Groves, Missouri. The work was done about 1880 and the original map, owned by

---

<sup>2</sup>W. J. Seever, Esq., in a letter Feb. 1, 1928, states that he has been familiar with Cahokia for forty years and that there must have been nearly three hundred mounds all told, or over one hundred fifty elevations of all kinds in the central group.

the Missouri Historical Society, was lent us from which our copy<sup>3</sup> was drawn with certain additions of mounds they omitted. The plot of Cahokia presented in the *Twelfth Annual Report of the Bureau of Ethnology* (Plan VI) (opposite page 134) apparently reproduces Hilgard's first map, but includes only sixty-four mounds.

A model of the center of the Cahokia Mound group was prepared for the Peabody Museum at Harvard by Mr. D. I. Bushnell, Jr.

Reference to our map will indicate that the majority of the mounds lie west, south, or east of Monks Mound. There are a few on the north side of Cahokia Creek. The larger tumuli occupy the center of the group east and west, but not the center north and south. Probably the lowlands lying along Cahokia Creek interfered with mound construction. Seven of the rectangular mounds, or pyramids, are so situated that their major axes are nearly east and west. Today many of the mounds shown in the original map by Mr. Hilgard, also on Bushnell's model and Thomas's map, appear externally as ovals rather than pyramids. This is due to farming operations. In case restorations are contemplated, it will be necessary to compare and check up very carefully all descriptions by observers in the past with measurements and descriptions to be made in the future. The survey of 1880 may not be technically accurate, yet if Mr. Hilgard or Mr. Patrick drew a certain mound as a pyramid, and today it appears as an oval or oblong mound, it should be classified as a pyramid.

Those who wish to follow the subject intensively are referred to the numerous titles presented in the bibliography, but particularly to the descriptions presented by Dr. Thomas, Mr. Bushnell, Dr. Snyder, Mr. Flagg, Mr. Brackenridge, and Dr. Crook. We shall not attempt to list in this report the innumerable measurements and descriptions of all these eighty-five mounds. However, as we come to the detailed account of the exploration of certain structures or sections of the village site, approximate measurements will be set forth.

#### MONKS MOUND

On the Map No. 38 (Fig. 1).

No single ancient monument in this country has been the subject of more frequent mention through a long period of time

<sup>3</sup>Figure 1.

than the famous Monks Mound. I am quite aware that there has been more recent interest in the cultures, or sites, which we have designated by the term Hopewell, Pecos, Chaco, Fort Ancient, or Madisonville. Discussion began with reference to Cahokia more than one hundred years ago. Since it has never been explored, because of its prominence and great size, and, furthermore, in view of the opinion of several geologists that it might be natural, rather than artificial, it is well that we devote considerable space to its description.

We should first consider the question of the artificial origin of Monks Mound. We have always felt that it was a mistake to have injected into the Cahokia situation the question of human origin of these mounds. As will be observed later in this report, shells, pottery fragments, and even one or two ocean shells were found in the bottom of No. 33 (James Ramey Mound) twenty-three feet below the surface.

The fact that *Unio* and *Busycon* shells were found practically on the same level in this mound, would preclude the theory advanced by one or two geologists in past years that all such shells were laid down by river action; obviously it would be possible for the fresh water shells to have been so deposited, but the presence of pottery, flint chips, charcoal, and oceanic shells, establishes the human origin of these mounds.

It would seem that the well dug by Hill in the early 1820's is acceptable evidence. Mr. Flagg, in his journal, *The Far West*, Vol. I, pp. 166-7 (1838) states:

Upon the western side of the Monks Mound, at a distance of several yards from the summit, is a well some eighty or ninety feet in depth; the water of which would be agreeable enough were not the presence of sulphur in some of its modifications so palpable. This well penetrates the heart of the mound, yet, from its depth, cannot reach lower than the level of the surrounding plain. I learned, upon inquiry, that when this well was excavated, several fragments of pottery, of decayed ears of corn, and other articles were thrown up from a depth of sixty-five feet; proof incontestable of the artificial structure of the mound. The associations, when drinking the water of this well, united with its peculiar flavour, are not of the most exquisite character when we reflect that the precious fluid has probably filtrated, part of it, at least, through the contents of a sepulchre.

This narrative was written ninety years ago by an observer who was personally present a short time after the well was dug. Certainly Flagg would gain nothing by exaggeration or falsification. A detailed description, by Dr. Leighton, with reference to the origin of Monks Mound is presented later in this report.



Dr. A. R. Crook in *The Origin of the Cahokia Mounds*, Bulletin of The Illinois State Museum, Springfield, 1922, states that while he formerly thought these mounds natural, as the result of the work of Moorehead and Leighton he is now convinced of their artificial origin.

Monks Mound was so named because of the presence of that interesting order known as the Trappist monks who lived there for a short period between 1808 and 1813. It is said that malaria was very prevalent, numbers of them died, and according to a letter written to Mr. Bushnell<sup>4</sup> by Father Obrecht, they were recalled to France, yet a few of the monks were buried in the region, and the survey of last year found two white men's skeletons about three feet below the summit of Mound No. 66. There were a few buttons remaining, but nothing to indicate that they were monks. The coffins appeared to have been made of split slabs of wood rather than sawed planks. Mr. Taylor's men reburied the bones midway between the two low mounds southwest of No. 66.

It is well that we devote some space to the observations of other commentators on Monks Mound. Although its character must have changed somewhat, due to erosion between 1820 and 1900, we are all of the opinion that the tumulus has suffered more serious damage the past twenty-five years. Thousands of people, at the time of the St. Louis Exposition, visited it and the publicity due to explorations and newspaper articles between 1922 and 1927 made of the spot a popular resort. The sides of the structure are very much worn, gullies have formed, and photographs taken today exhibit a marked contrast when placed alongside our frontispiece, reconstructed from a photograph and records made in subsequent years. It is respectfully urged upon the Park Commission of the State of Illinois that visitors be confined to one or two paths, and that the various washes and erosions be immediately repaired.

Professor F. W. Putnam of Harvard inspected Monks Mound. Some of his observations are presented in the *Twelfth Annual Report, Peabody Museum of American Archaeology*, pp. 470-5, 1880. We present a portion of Putnam's remarks:

Cahokia Mound. In company with several gentlemen from St. Louis, I had the good fortune on September 1st (1879) to visit the largest mound within the limits of the United States. . . . While there is not the slightest

---

<sup>4</sup>*The Cahokia and Surrounding Mound Groups*. By D. I. Bushnell, Jr. Peabody Museum, p. 9, May, 1904.

evidence that the Cahokias of the time of La Salle were builders of this, or of other mounds in the vicinity, it is a gratification to be able to perpetuate the name of an extinct tribe of American Indians in connection with this monument of an unknown American Nation. . . .

Situated in the midst of a group of about sixty other mounds, of more than ordinary size, several in the vicinity being from thirty to sixty feet in height, and of various forms, Cahokia Mound, rising by four platforms, or terraces, to a height of about one hundred feet, and covering an area of over twelve acres,<sup>5</sup> holds a relation to the other tumuli of the Mississippi Valley similar to that of the Great Pyramid of Egypt to the other monuments of the valley of the Nile.

I am glad to be able to state that Dr. J. J. R. Patrick, a careful and zealous archæologist, residing in the vicinity of this interesting monument has, with the assistance of other gentlemen, not only made a survey of the whole group of which Cahokia is the prominent figure, but has also prepared two accurate models of the mound itself; copies of which have been promised to the Museum.

One of these models, Plate III (Fig. 1), represents the mound as it now appears, with its once level platform and even slopes gullied, washed, and worn away; and the other (Fig. 2) is in the form of a restoration, showing the mound as it probably existed before the plow of the white man had destroyed its even sides and hard platforms, and thus given nature a foothold for her destructive agencies. The projecting portion (A) from the apron (B) points nearly due south.

Probably this immense tumulus was not erected primarily as a burial mound, though such may prove to be the case. From the present evidence it seems more likely that it was made in order to obtain an elevated site for some particular purpose; presumably an important public building. One fact, however, which I observed, indicated that a great length of time was occupied in its construction, and that its several level platforms may have been the sites of many lodges, which, possibly, may have been placed upon such artificial elevations in order to avoid the malaria of a district, the settlement of which in former, as in recent times, was likely due to the prolific and easily cultivated soil; or, more likely, for the purpose of protection from enemies. The fact, to which I allude, is that everywhere in the gullies, and over the broken surface of the mound, mixed with the earth of which it is composed, are quantities of broken vessels of clay, flint chips, arrowheads, charcoal, bones of animals, etc., apparently the refuse of a numerous people; of course it is possible that these remains, so unlike the homogeneous structure of an ordinary mound, may be the simple refuse of numerous feasts that may have taken place on the mound at various times during its construction. The first interpretation, however, is as well borne out as any other from our present knowledge of this mound; the structure and object of which cannot be fully understood until a thorough examination has been made, and while such an examination is desirable, it is to be hoped that this important and imposing monument will never meet the fate which Colonel Foster, under a false impression<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup>Actually over 16 W. K. M.

<sup>6</sup>The destruction of "Big Mound" on the opposite side of the river, within the city limits of St. Louis, probably led Col. Foster into error.

due to a confusion of names and places, mourns as having already occurred.

The various published measurements during all these years differ somewhat as to the length and breadth of this remarkable pyramid. All writers agree that the height is one hundred feet, although the Ramey family claimed that their survey at the time the macadam road was constructed, a few years ago, gave the summit as one hundred four feet above their lawn.

McAdams in *Antiquities of Madison County, Illinois*, states:

As the size of the Cahokia Mound has been given variously we applied to Mr. B. J. Van Court, a practical surveyor living in the vicinity, at O'Fallon, and whom we knew had made a regular survey of the mound. Mr. Van Court sent us the following:

"In my survey I did not follow the irregularities of the mound, but made straight lines enclosing the base. The largest axis is from north to south and is 998 feet, the shortest from east to west is 721 feet. The height of the mound is ninety-nine feet. The base of the structure covers sixteen acres, two roods and three perches of ground."

The summit and lower terrace of the Cahokia Mound have been plowed a few times. Brackenridge, who visited the mound in 1811, says that the monks used the lower terrace for a kitchen garden, and also had the summit of the structure sown in wheat. The great pyramid has not been materially changed, however, and doubtless presents the same outlines today as at the time of the discovery of this continent by Columbus.

Since some doubts have been expressed as to the artificial origin of this structure, we were much interested to ascertain what could be learned in this respect by examination. On the top of the pyramid are the remains of a house, said to have been commenced by the monks, but afterwards added to and finished as a comfortable residence for the family of a man named Hill, an enterprising settler who owned the mound and a large body of land adjoining. Beneath this house is a deep unwallled cellar. In a section down the side of the cellar to the depth of ten feet is very plainly revealed a deposit of various kinds of earth without stratification. The principal part of this deposit was the black humus or mould, so common in the bottom and forming the principal soil, very sticky when wet and breaking into cubical blocks when dry. Here and there, as if thrown promiscuously among the black mould, is a bunch of yellow clay, or sand, or marly loess, these bunches being about such size as a man could easily carry.

Similar sections can be seen up the old road made by Hill to ascend to his residence.

Mr. McAdams reprints the story often related by Mr. Fred Ramey that his father many years ago employed miners from Collinsville and ran a tunnel about ninety feet toward the center of the mound. A fragment of galena was discovered some fifteen feet from the tunnel mouth and there were many small

deposits of the usual masses of different colored earth, indicating that the mound had been constructed by hand. That is, the construction was similar to that observed in other mounds of the Cahokia group.

As was previously remarked, Mr. Bushnell's account is the most satisfactory. With reference to Monks Mound he says:

It is a truncated rectangular pyramid rising to a height of one hundred feet above the original surface. The dimensions of its base are: from north to south, 1080 feet, from east to west, 710 feet. The area of base is about sixteen acres. Viewed from the east it appears regular in form and three terraces are clearly defined.

In the plan<sup>7</sup> Plate III (Fig. 1) of Cahokia the four terraces and the point which projects due south from the lowest terrace are clearly represented. The lowest terrace, (B) on plan, is five hundred feet from east to west and two hundred feet from north to south. From the south face of that terrace, a point (A) having the appearance of a graded approach, projects due south for a distance of eighty feet. The western side of this projection is slightly east of the middle of the mound. The second terrace (C) is at the present time badly gullied and worn away, which makes it difficult to ascertain the size of elevation. The next terrace (D) has an elevation of ninety-seven feet above the original surface. Near the centre of that terrace, there formerly stood a small conical mound<sup>8</sup> which was destroyed many years ago when a house was built upon the site. The fourth terrace (E) is at the present time the most elevated part of the mound. Its greatest height is one hundred feet above the plain, or three feet above the third terrace.

The western line of the two upper terraces, extending from north to south, passes nearly through the centre of the mound. A modern driveway, extending from the plain to the summit of the mound, is shown on the plan. With the exception of the slopes from the lowest terrace—usually referred to as the "apron"—the sides are deeply gullied; but at the present time a thick sod covers the greater portion of the surface and will prevent any further washing away of this famous prehistoric work, unless it is again attacked by the destructive hand of man.<sup>9</sup>

We have taken the liberty of changing Mr. Bushnell's Fig. 1 to our Fig. 1, Plate III, and also omitting several of his plate and figure references.

When the famous Hopewell Mound,<sup>10</sup> No. 25, was explored, it was stated in the report that several observers had presented different measurements. This is due to the fact that plowing and rainfall causes all mounds, except those in timber or cov-

<sup>7</sup>Reduced from the plan in the *Twelfth Annual Report of the Peabody Museum*, p. 472.

<sup>8</sup>Featherstonhaugh. *Excursions through the Slave States*, pp. 66, 67. N. Y. 1844.

<sup>9</sup>Unfortunately the sod is worn away—what Mr. Bushnell feared has come to pass.

<sup>10</sup>*The Hopewell Mound Group of Ohio* by Warren K. Moorehead, Field Museum of Natural History, Pub. 211, Vol. XI, No. 5.

ered by vegetation, to extend their diameters. The wash down the side forms what is termed the "feather" edge. Therefore one observer may conclude that this "feather" edge extends eight or ten, or even twelve feet from the base of the mound. Another observer will conclude that this gentle slope is due to farming operations, or a dead furrow, and estimate ten or twelve feet less diameter than his predecessor. In a structure as large as Monks Mound it is quite conceivable that at the time of the Hilgard-Patrick-Seever survey of 1880 there was less "feather" edge and the base diameters were from fifteen to thirty feet shorter on all sides save toward the west.

The records state that both the monks and the mechanic, Hill, occupied the summit and the terrace. When Hill laid the foundation of his house, according to the statement of Featherstonhaugh (see bibliography), Mr. Hill dug further and found human bones, Indian pottery, axes, and other objects. Whether these were in Indian graves or deposited in a small mound built on the summit of Monks, does not appear in the narrative.

To explore Monks Mound would be an exceedingly expensive, as well as hazardous, undertaking. In the James Ramey Mound (No. 33) although the walls were slightly over twenty-three feet in height, serious cave-ins occurred and the men were sometimes in danger. One cannot conceive of a trench in artificial earth with walls one hundred four feet in height. It is therefore suggested, since the mound belongs to the State, and both speculation and interest are rife as to its contents, that several tunnels be projected through the base. Miners from Collinsville, under an engineer familiar with tunnelling operations, would be able to do the work, and with proper timbering and inspection the proposal is quite feasible and should be carried into effect. Tunnels from the base are suggested rather than one from the apex, because in the latter event one's observations would be confined to a shaft six or seven feet in diameter, whereas lateral base tunnels would expose vastly more area. Lateral tunnels would settle more effectively the question as to the natural or artificial origin of Monks Mound than a single, narrow shaft. We are informed by Engineer Taylor that with modern engineering operations in effect, it would be quite possible to enlarge the tunnels, thus forming small rooms, or chambers, in case important discoveries were made.

It is, of course, understood that none of our expeditions attempted any exploration of Monks Mound, although we ex-

amined carefully the several deep washes at various points, and at one place put our extension auger down about twenty feet. So far as these observations—which were superficial—extended, the mound appeared of human handiwork (like all other Cahokia Mounds) and there were traces of pottery, charcoal, flint chips, etc. We might add a personal note that we have examined mounds throughout the Mississippi Valley since 1887 and comparing Monks Mound with all other large ones, we have never doubted its artificial origin.

Dr. J. F. Snyder of Virginia, Illinois, presented an interesting paper in *The Archæologist*, September, 1894, entitled "An Illinois 'Teocalli'." In this article he comments at some length on the monuments at Lebanon, which were visited by us in 1923, and are briefly referred to on pages 260-262 of this report.

It is unfortunate that no one of our early observers has left us a plan or map of the ancient Indian trails, which were to be observed nearly a hundred years ago. Dr. Snyder sheds a little light on the subject and we quote from his paper.

The distance from this system of earth-works to the great Cahokia Mound in the American Bottom, on a straight line deviating but a few degrees from east and west in direction, is fifteen miles. That the architects and builders of the two Teocallis were contemporaneous and of the same ethnic stock, admits of little doubt. The relations existing between the people clustered about each of these temple mounds must have been intimate and harmonious. When a small boy, I remember hearing the statement made by Rev. John M. Peck—a noted Baptist minister, who came from Connecticut to this part of Illinois in 1818, and afterward founded Rock Spring Seminary, three miles west of Lebanon—that, at that early day, a deeply-worn footpath, or trail, could be readily traced from Emerald Mound through the dense woods, crossing Silver Creek at a rocky shallow ford, to and down the bluffs and continuing through the Bottom directly to the mound on Cahokia Creek. This statement was corroborated by Gov. John Reynolds and other old pioneers of this region. On the top of one of the highest points of the bluffs, where this trail emerges from the uplands into the Bottom, is a large conical mound, locally known as the "Sugar Loaf," which probably served the prehistoric savages, who erected it, the purpose of a signal station. From its summit the eye sweeps over a splendid view of this portion of the great river bottom, with its beautiful groves and small prairies, its many Indian mounds and numerous lakes and creeks, reaching far beyond to the mighty Mississippi and the western border of rocky bluffs, on the crest of which were, long ago, artificial mounds similar to this one—the "Big Mound" of St. Louis, fifty feet in height, could from here be plainly seen—now replaced by the miles of masonry and smoke-clouded walls and chimneys and towers of the rapidly expanding city.

## PONDS AND DEPRESSIONS

There has been not a little speculation with reference to the numerous depressions, some rather extensive, scattered throughout approximately three thousand acres of the Cahokia group. On the map, Fig. 1, most of these are shown but there are several additional ones south of Mounds Nos. 6 to 11, and two or three large ponds south of Nos. 65 and 66. Drainage operations have affected several of these and in dry seasons there is little or no water in them.

The writer has never been of the opinion that these depressions were of special significance, but rather held the view in common with Myer, Willoughby, and Cowen that the explanation is rather simple. The Indians obtained the earth for mound construction from such places, preferring to dig rather deeply in the ground than to take up the soil evenly from a larger area.

The presence of chipped objects and pottery fragments in the muck in the several ponds surrounding the Cahokia group gave rise to the suggestion that possibly (but not probably) the Indians built houses on piles over the water. Four men were put to work in October, 1921, testing the bottom of two or three of these depressions. A dredging apparatus similar to oyster tongs was made, and the workmen lowered the tongs from a flat bottomed boat, and continued dredging for about two days. Where the water was shallow, they waded and made use of ordinary garden rakes. The result of the test was not satisfactory. The bottom is rather smooth, not irregular, and slippery. While numbers of artifacts were brought up, the tongs slipped over others. Our investigation did not extend to all the ponds. There is not sufficient material to indicate that Indians had built dwellings over the water, and furthermore, in dry seasons, such as frequently occur, there would not be sufficient water to afford protection to dwellers in cabins of the Swiss lake dweller type. Two of the large depressions were dry, and the survey was able to test them with augers and shovels. Little material was secured.

The Ramey brothers claim that when they were boys, two of these ponds contained water throughout the year, were deeper, and such fish as crappie, bass, and buffalo were frequently taken. A more careful search, extending over a greater length of time, might give different results, but at the present writing

we are of the opinion that artifacts were either lost or thrown in the ponds by the Indians. Quite likely in early times some of these ponds drained into Canteen or Cahokia creeks and the fish came up during freshets.



## THE VILLAGE SITE

The approximate extent of this has already been given. The ancient habitations, cabins or wigwams, appear to have been placed on either side of Cahokia Creek, and for a considerable distance up Canteen Creek (a small stream tributary to Cahokia Creek). The width of the village appears to have varied from a few hundred yards to as much as a mile in breadth. That is, the main axis of the village followed the course of Cahokia Creek south, west, and then southwest. The statement as to its extent is based upon examination by several workmen under our direction at various places. On the open farm lands we experienced no trouble in tracing the village site, but within the city limits of East St. Louis it was necessary to seek out many owners and secure permit for test pits in their back yards. We were not able to test generally, but throughout the city as a whole we tested in some thirty or forty places. We depend chiefly on Dr. Rau's rather complete description of the East St. Louis area. Our work tends to verify in most particulars Rau's observations of sixty-seven years ago.

The question arises whether all of this extensive village was inhabited at one time. Were there several periods of occupation? Did the Indians make their first settlement at the mouth of Cahokia Creek on the banks of the Mississippi? Again, was the first settlement made on Cahokia Creek near the spot now occupied by Monks Mound?

It is scarcely conceivable that so large a village—verily a city in extent—existed as a unit in a given time epoch. That suggestion is contrary to Indian custom and history so far as we know it. That great quantities of corn, beans, or other foods could be grown in the fertile American Bottoms, one grants. Indians were dependent to a large extent on game, and such a population as the far-flung debris indicates could not subsist on game alone.

Is it not likely that the Cahokia folk established camps from time to time at different points along the two creeks? Was not the region inhabited for several hundred years? These questions are important. At present we cannot answer them. Aside from concentration on descriptions of Monks Mound, the early writers present little of technical interest with regard to the village life. Rau, being a scientist, has given us material of con-

siderable value. Readers will understand that this is no reflection on the other men, for archæology, as a science, had not been established. Some later observers, such as McAdams, Patrick, and others, failed to avail themselves of remarkable or unusual opportunities afforded before the roads, factories, and other "improvements" changed the entire Indian setting. Dr. J. F. Snyder, one of the best amateur archæologists that the State of Illinois has produced, was not afforded financial support and was unable to do any considerable work in the Cahokia region. As evidence of Snyder's ability and his knowledge of Illinois cultures, readers are referred to his paper, "Prehistoric Illinois," in Nos. 2-3, Vol. 1, of the *Journal of the Illinois Historical Society* (1908).

The ground occupied by the village, as previously mentioned, varies in width. The heaviest occupation appears to lie in an area bounded by Mounds Nos. 4 and 73 to the east, 44 and 80 to the west. At a rough estimate this is some five hundred acres. In short, the thickest deposit and numerous ash pits center east and south of Monks Mound.

The pits dug in the stockyard district of East St. Louis, five miles westward from Monks Mound, would indicate an equally populous village at that point, the pottery fragments exhibiting characteristic Cahokia decorations, and disturbed ground containing human artifacts extends downward from twenty inches to three feet.

The Ramey brothers informed us that many years ago their father had some trenches dug to drain land north of Mounds Nos. 18 to 24 into Cahokia Creek. It was found that this land had filled in, due to overflow, probably five or six feet, if not more. Testing with our eight-inch augers at several points thereabouts, we found heavy village debris at a considerable depth. We should not forget that Cahokia and Canteen creeks have probably changed their channels more than once. Dr. Cyrus Thomas in the *Twelfth Annual Report of the Bureau of Ethnology*, pp. 133-134, comments as follows:

It is worthy of note that nearly all the relics found at the Cahokia group of mounds have been taken from the low ground between the mounds. The remarkable find of pottery, implements, and shells made by Mr. McAdams in the winter of 1881 was in the low land a short distance from the northeast corner of the great mound. The articles were nearly all taken from a square rod of ground. This has been to some extent Dr. Patrick's experience in making his fine collection of pottery.

The real burial places of the builders of the Cahokia mounds probably is yet to be discovered.

The bank of Cahokia Creek during the occupation of the mounds was evidently more to the south than its present line along the eastern part of the group. The old bank is still plainly visible. The low land between this old bank and the creek is now covered with forest trees. All along this bank, which forms the edge of the plateau on which the mounds stand, are abundant evidences of occupation in remote times. In digging two or three feet at almost any point along this bank indications of fire-places are found, with numerous river shells, broken pottery, and kitchen refuse. As all the arable ground about the mound has been in cultivation many years, it is quite possible that some of the burial places, which are usually quite shallow, have been destroyed, as pieces of human bones are very common in the plowed fields.

Since Thomas's visit the drainage commission has had one or two deep canals dug through swamp lands north of Monks Mound. These are indicated on our map, but there have been some extensive developments since this map was drawn. The result is the gradual filling up of most of Cahokia Creek and the lower portion of Canteen Creek. Trees and bushes are in evidence in the old channels and on the banks, and observations rendered difficult. In order to make careful study of the village and its relation to the first creek bed, it is suggested that at some future time a trench some three hundred feet in width be carried for a distance of one thousand feet. There is no immediate need of such an operation, the undertaking would be expensive and it may be well deferred to the future, but the plan should certainly be put into effect some years hence.

There were two extensive explorations of the village site during the years 1921 and 1922, and some testing, rather than trench digging, done during the season of 1923. In this report we include the observations published in Vol. XXI, No. 6, University of Illinois Bulletin, October 8, 1923, with some changes and additions.

We had read William McAdams's volume, *Ancient Races of the Mississippi Valley* (1877) and observed that on page 57 he says:

In excavating near the base of the great temple mound of Cahokia, whose towering height of over one hundred feet gave a grateful shade for our labors, we found in a crumbling tomb of earth and stone a great number of burial vases, over one hundred of which were quite perfect. It was a most singular collection, as if the mound-builder, with patient and skillful hand, united with artistic taste in shaping the vessels, had endeavored to make a representation of the natural history of the country

in ceramics. Some of these were painted, and there were also the paint-pots and dishes holding the colors, together with the little bone paddle for mixing, and other implements of the aboriginal artist. Some of these are figured in our "Antiquities of Cahokia."

This discovery was made in the village site. Both of Mr. McAdams's sons, as well as W. J. Seever, Esq., visited the scene of our operations and indicated where they thought Mr. McAdams had excavated. During that season (1921) we had a crew of twenty-one men at work and we examined the ground some six hundred feet northeast of Monks Mound where the witnesses thought McAdams made the discovery. We also extended operations, working rather intensively here and there for a radius of three hundred yards. Some of the trenches were fifty feet in length. Broken human skeletons were found scattered here and there, probably where Mr. McAdams had made finds. We recovered one flexed burial accompanied by half of a bowl. There was another partial burial a few feet to the west. The ground about it was much disturbed. Above both burials was a layer of hard baked red earth some two feet from the surface. The disturbed earth extended from three to as much as five feet in depth. During the course of operations in the village site, numbers of fragments of galena,<sup>1</sup> portions of Busycon shells, arrowheads, hammerstones, and other material in common use among the Indians were discovered.

It is most unfortunate that McAdams did not preserve intact so interesting and unusual a deposit. Apparently the skeletal material was carelessly handled. The bones we found indicate perfectly good skeletons which might have been easily saved for study, measurement, and tabulation.

When excavating by means of test pits, with a view of studying the character and extent of the village site, we found a number of level, burnt clay floors varying from twenty to thirty feet in diameter. Three or four of these had been disturbed by the plow, others, somewhat deeper, were in fair condition. One near the shore of the lake, a quarter of a mile south of Monks Mound, was composed of ordinary clay, burned quite hard and some twenty by twenty-five feet in diameter. Whether these are the floors of wigwams or houses, we do not know. They seem rather small for dance floors or assembly places. There may be

---

<sup>1</sup>Lumps of this ore occurred in several mounds. It probably served as paint. Surfaces of galena masses are often flattened, indicating rubbing. The material may have been secured by the Indians from galena deposits in Missouri or Illinois.

more of them revealed by future exploration. No more refuse occurred on these floors than elsewhere in the village site.

Just north of Mound 31 are three mounds which have been cultivated until the edges overlap. About the bases of these the village site material seems to be most numerous. We are of the opinion that this part of the site should be quite thoroughly examined, since we dug up several pottery heads of birds, etc., all of exceptional form and finish.

The following is quoted from a study made by Dr. Charles Rau of the pottery found in the Cahokia village site.<sup>2</sup>

That the fabrication of earthenware was once carried to a great extent among the Indians, is shown by the great number of sherds which lie scattered over the sites of their former villages and on their camping places; but they are, perhaps, nowhere in this country more numerous than in the "American Bottom," a strip of land which extends about one hundred miles along the Mississippi, in Illinois, and is bounded by the present bank of the river and its former eastern confine, indicated by a range of picturesque wooded hills and ridges, commonly called "the Bluffs." This bottom, which is on an average six miles wide and very fertile, was formerly the seat of a numerous indigenous population, and abounds in tumular works, cemeteries, and other memorials of the subdued race. Among the lesser relics left by the former occupants may be counted the remnants of broken vessels, which occur very abundantly in various places of this region. These fragments are, however, mostly small; and, according to my experience, entire vessels are not found on the surface, but frequently in the ancient mounds and cemeteries, where they have been deposited with the dead as receptacles for food, to serve on their journey to the happy land of spirits.

About six years ago, while living in the west, I was much gratified by the discovery of a place in the American Bottom where the manufacture of earthenware was evidently carried on by the Indians. The locality to which I allude is the left bank of the Cahokia Creek<sup>3</sup> at the northern extremity of Illinoistown, opposite to St. Louis. At the point just mentioned the bank of the creek is somewhat high and steep, leaving only a small space for a path along the water. When I passed there for the first time, I noticed, scattered over the slope or protruding from the ground, a great many pieces of pottery of much larger size than I had ever seen before, some being of the size of a man's hand, and others considerably larger; and, upon examination, I found that they consisted of a grayish clay mixed with pounded shells. A great number of old shells of the unio, a bivalve which inhabits the creek, was lying about, and their position induced me to believe that they had been brought there by human agency rather than by the overflowing of the creek. My curiosity being excited, I continued my investigation, and discovered at the upper part of the

<sup>2</sup>Smithsonian Report for 1866. Published 1872, pp. 346-352.

<sup>3</sup>This creek runs in a southwardly direction through Madison County and a part of St. Clair County, and empties into the Mississippi, four miles below St. Louis, near the old French village of Cahokia.

bank an old fosse, or digging, of some length or depth, and overgrown with stramonium or jimson weed; and upon entering this excavation, I saw near its bottom a layer of clay, identical in appearance with that which composed the fragments of pottery. The excavation had unmistakably been dug for the purpose of obtaining the clay, and I became now convinced beyond doubt that the fabrication of earthen vessels had been carried on by the aborigines at this very spot. All the requisites for manufacturing vessels were on hand; the layer of clay furnished the chief ingredient, and the creek not only supplied the water for moistening the clay, but harbored also the mollusks whose valves were used in tempering it. Wood abounded in the neighborhood. All these facts being ascertained, it was easy to account for the occurrence of the large fragments. Whenever pottery is made, some of the articles will crack during the process of burning, and this will happen more frequently when the method employed in that operation is of a rude and primitive character, as it doubtless was in the present case. The sherds found at this place may, therefore, with safety be considered as the remnants of vessels that were spoiled while in the fire, and thrown aside as objects unfit for use.

I did not succeed in finding the traces of a kiln or fireplace, and it is probable that the vessels were merely baked in an open fire, of which all vestiges have been swept away long ago. The occurrence of the broken pottery was confined to a comparatively small area along the bank, a space not exceeding fifty paces in length, as far as I can recollect. They were most numerous in the proximity of the old digging, and at that place quite a number of them were taken out of the creek into which they had fallen from the bank. Farther up the creek I saw another excavation in the bank, of much smaller dimensions, and likewise dug for obtaining clay. Among the shells and sherds I noticed many flints which had obviously been fashioned to serve as cutting implements; they were perhaps, used in tracing the ornamental lines on the vessels or in smoothing their surfaces.

I did not find a single complete vessel at this place, but a great variety of fragments, the shape of which enabled me to determine the outline of the utensils of which they originally formed parts. This was not a very difficult matter, especially in cases when portions of the rims remained. The rim, it will be seen, is formed into a lip and turned over, in order to facilitate suspension; sometimes, however, it is cut off abruptly. Some of the vessels—more especially the smaller ones—were provided with ears, others had the outer rim set with conical projections or studs, both for convenience and ornament; and a few of the fragments exhibit very neatly indented or notched rims. In size these vessels varied considerably; some measured only a few inches through the middle, while the largest ones, to judge from the curvature of the rims, must have exceeded two feet in diameter. The bottom of the vessels mostly seems to have been rounded or convex. I found not a single flat bottom-piece. This, however, may be merely accidental, considering that flat-bottomed vessels were made by the Indians. The appearance of the fragments indicates that the earthenware was originally tolerably well burned, and the fracture exhibits in many instances a reddish color. But, as the art of glazing was unknown to the manufacturers, it is no wonder that the sherds, after

having been imbedded for many years in the humid ground, or exposed to rain and the alternate action of a burning sun and a severe cold, are now somewhat brittle and fragile; yet, even when new, this aboriginal earthenware must have been much inferior in compactness and hardness to the ordinary kind or European or American crockery.

The thickness of the fragments varies from one-eighth to three-eighths of an inch, according to the size of the vessels, the largest being also the strongest in material. But in each piece the thickness is uniform in a remarkable degree; the rims are perfectly circular, and the general regularity displayed in the workmanship of these vessels renders it almost difficult to believe that the manufacturers were unacquainted with the use of the potter's wheel. Such, however, was the case. I have already mentioned that the clay used in the fabrication of this earthenware is mixed with coarsely pulverized unio-shells from the creek; only a few of the smaller bowls or vases seem to consist of pure clay. The vessels were covered on the outside, and some even on both sides, with a thick coating of paint, either of a black, dark brown, or beautiful red color, and in some fragments the latter still retains its original brightness. Only one color, however, was used in the painting of each article. It is evident that the coloring preceded the process of baking, and the surfaces thus coated are smooth and shining, the paint replacing to a certain extent the enamel produced by glazing.

The land lying west of Sand Prairie Road belongs to George Merrell, Esq., and for nearly half a mile, until Mr. Recklein's property is reached, is leased by Mr. Stolle. Throughout this land, from 1500 to 2500 feet west of Monks Mound, we found indications of a heavily populated village. Varying from twelve inches to four feet in depth, the soil was disturbed, and the usual pottery fragments, bones of animals, ashes, Unio shells, hammer stones, spalls, etc., were present. The Stolle land was tested in October, 1922. We again examined properties to the south, owned by Mrs. Tippetts, Mr. Wells, and Mr. Cole. Beyond Stolle's land, to the west of the Recklein land, the village site continued for more than a quarter of a mile, and is said to extend through the property owned by Mrs. Thomas. She was the only person in the Cahokia region who would not permit us to excavate. Her workmen, however, said that pottery vessels and bones were found when they dug post holes. Just how far north of Cahokia Creek at this point the village existed, we do not know, but we presume about a quarter of a mile.

Across the National Highway from Monks Mound are the estates of Mr. Cole, Mrs. Tippetts, and Mr. Wells. We did considerable work on Mr. Wells's land in the vicinity of Mounds Nos. 50, 52, and 53. We discovered the usual village site debris

to be quite as heavy as at any point on Ramey lands to the north. Mound No. 52, a low structure, appeared to be a house site, and during excavation we observed many lumps of hard burnt clay in which were impressions of reeds and sticks. These gave us information with reference to the walls or methods of construction of the dwellings. Cane, the favorite material used in clay or mud in building wigwam walls in the South, does not occur on Cahokia Creek, so other growths more or less cane-like in character were employed by the Indians.



## EXPLORATION OF CERTAIN MOUNDS DURING THE VARIOUS SEASONS

Examination of the ground on which was located the village of the Cahokia people is necessary to an understanding of their mode of life. However, since nearly every tribe of Indians living in the Mississippi Valley placed with the dead objects illustrative of their arts, occupations, religious beliefs, etc., it is equally essential that the burial places of the ancient Cahokians be discovered. To this end the various surveys worked intensively and tested numerous mounds. More than that, opinions were sought from Mr. Willoughby, director of the Peabody Museum, Mr. Bushnell, who is familiar with Cahokia, the late Mr. Myer (previously referred to), Mr. Seever, Dr. Whelpley, and many others. Frequently these, or other archæologists visiting our headquarters, would go over the map with us and give their opinions as to what tumuli should be selected for observation. The net result of all digging and conferences is to the effect that up to the present time there is no positive evidence as to the location of the great burial place at Cahokia—that repository which all agree exists, and the discovery of which would enable us to answer many questions concerning the Cahokians. These matters are mentioned in some detail for the reason that those who do not visualize the extent of the territory and the numbers of mounds, both large and small, and the amount of labor and money necessary to proper examination, have sometimes been prone to criticize. We have steadfastly kept in view the primary purpose of the Cahokia exploration, which is to shed light on this most interesting and ancient culture. According to our experience we are justified in the conclusion that only by intensive spade work in the future, testing mound after mound, will we achieve the desired result. There is no such thing as an "archæological divining rod." One of our old workmen in the State of Maine, who served on many expeditions between 1910 and 1920, in his simple way uttered a great truth: "Nobody can look into the ground." We think this rather commonplace expression covers the Cahokia situation. Without objects of aboriginal origin, no one can study aboriginal art and concept.

Southwest of Monks Mound (No. 38) is No. 48, on which in 1921 stood a farmhouse in a fairly good state of repair. This

was used as headquarters during that season. Mr. Bushnell gives the elevation as twenty-five feet. Our measurements did not agree with those of either Mr. Bushnell or Mr. Ramey. The question of wash, or feather edge, at the base probably accounts for the differences. We might remark in passing that the proposed new survey will present accurate measurements of all these mounds, hence, throughout this report they might well be omitted. On reflection, it seems to us that Mound No. 48, although of pyramid form, may contain a large number of interments. This is merely a matter of opinion, but certainly there is much village site debris on or near the surface, and the earth appears to be much disturbed. An auger hole or two indicated very dark earth—not gumbo—that similar to Etowah, Hopewell, or other burial mounds.

#### THE KUNNEMANN MOUND<sup>1</sup>

On the estate of George Merrell, Esq., half a mile north of Monks Mound, is No. 11, a large structure which we named in honor of Mr. Merrell's tenant, Mr. A. Kunnemann, who has resided on the tract for over twenty-five years.

Originally the tumulus was about four hundred feet diameter and conical—not a pyramid as has been recorded on one of the maps. Twenty years ago fifteen to sixteen feet of the summit was removed, and a trench run in from the north side some ninety feet, in order that earth to build a dike along Cahokia Creek might be obtained. Thus the mound had been seriously damaged. We wished to test one of the larger structures, and as this one offered unusual facilities, we began work September 16, 1921. Witnesses present during the previous work were questioned and all agreed that the mound was conical, or "pointed" as Mr. Kunnemann expressed it. The present diameter of the top is seventy-five by fifty-six feet. The sides are about twenty-five degrees slope. Restoring this same ratio of slope to the top would give fifteen to sixteen feet more elevation, as stated. We found the base near the center to be thirty-five feet below the present flattened summit. Therefore, the tumulus was originally not below fifty, or more than fifty-one feet in altitude. This would make it the third mound of the whole group in height, but not in cubic contents.

---

<sup>1</sup>See Plates I and VII.

Some three weeks were spent upon Kunnemann Mound. When we stopped work we were near the center and had excavated some eighty feet beyond the point reached by the dike builders. (Plate VII, Figs. 2 and 3). No skeletons were discovered, but in the earth were great quantities of flint chips, broken pottery, animal bones, and other refuse scooped up by the natives when they took the earth from about their cabins to build the mound.

As we had before us a nearly straight wall thirty-five feet in height, we were afforded an excellent opportunity to study mound construction.

It was found that the mound (that is, the portion we excavated) rested on a heavy layer of clear sand. Test pits sunk in this sand indicated that it was natural, had not been deposited by man. The lowest part of the mound is ordinary mixed earth and not stratified. About eight feet above the sand, or base, is dark earth in which are many broken artifacts; above this, some five or six feet of yellowish loam, then a rather distinct decayed vegetation layer running across the face of our fifty-foot trench. This is rather thin and even; then several feet of darker soil, but not gumbo, and above this the heaviest layer of decayed vegetation, in some spots about half an inch in thickness. Yellow loam containing some sand extends fully ten feet above. In this and the layer below the "dumps" or basketfuls of earth are noted. That is, natives carried the earth in loads varying from a trifle over a peck to a half bushel or more. Just below the summit is a four to five foot layer of heavy, compact gumbo. These layers or stratification are presented in Plate I.

All these lines and strata are more or less even—that is, level—indicating that the people did not first build a small conical mound and gradually increase the size. Apparently they decided to construct a large tumulus, built up layers of somewhat different soil, and placed the heavy gumbo some distance from the apex. It is assumed they continue through the whole mound, but as mounds are sometimes irregular in construction, subsequent exploration of the remaining half may present differences in stratification.

After the work had progressed some days and when we were at a point north of the center, and where the mound was originally about forty-one feet high, we found a heavy layer of burned earth. This was almost floor-like in character. It was followed for a distance of thirty-five feet east and west, but

was considerably narrower north and south. In the northern edge of this floor, eighteen feet above the base and eight feet below the present summit, we uncovered a circular, altar-like burned basin. It is shown in Plate VIII. Half of this had been broken off, whether by the Indians or the dike builders, we do not know. The latter state that they observed no burned basin. It was empty, but consisted of ordinary clay, hard burned. It was about a yard in diameter, ten or twelve inches deep and surrounded by a well defined, broad rim somewhat elevated. Extending in all directions beyond (save north) was the level, burned floor referred to. Why this altar should be nearly half-way above the base, we are unable to state. Altars are often found in Ohio mounds, but they lie on the base line.

When we had approached near the center of the mound we observed a burned area extending most of the distance across the face of our wall. It was sometimes nearly two feet thick. There was also a light sand stratum, some twenty feet above the base line, which extended some thirty-eight feet east and west.

Near the center and twenty-seven feet from the base, Mr. Eldridge found the head of a frog effigy pipe and numerous fragments of fine pottery. Various large flat, shell beads were also discovered from time to time. Pottery fragments were quite common.

Why no burials were found in the north half of the Kunne-mann Mound, we do not know. Possibly, they will be found in the southern or eastern portions of the structure. Examination of the mound should be completed, but we did not feel justified in continuing operations. Some fragments of human bones were mingled with the village-site debris, but they were not burials. Broken human bones are frequently found in ash pits and in mounds.

#### SCHMIDT'S MOUND

Just back of Mr. Schmidt's hotel are Mounds Nos. 31 and 30. Both are flattened pyramids, the large one, No. 31, is twenty-two and one-half feet high, although originally it must have been much higher. No. 30, although entered on the Patrick-Seever survey as a pyramid, at present appears as an extensive platform. While to the eye it does not appear to be over five feet in altitude, yet on examination we found burnt stone, pot-

tery sherds, and refuse extending to a depth of over seven feet. There was a level floor of burnt earth in the base—possibly a dance floor. Our measurements of No. 30 indicate the following—one hundred eighty feet east and west and one hundred eighty feet north and south. Fourteen men excavated a trench fifty-five feet in length. Test pits were sunk in this trench to the depth of ten feet five inches, but no human artifacts were discovered at any point below seven feet eight inches. About half a bushel of broken implements, pottery fragments of superior workmanship, and many lumps of burnt clay were taken from the excavation. Some of the burnt masses contain impressions of reeds and rushes. No. 31 was not tested, but in the north end Dr. Higgins of St. Louis had excavated a mushroom cellar. He found broken pottery and objects, also soft, dark “mound earth,” not gumbo.

#### THE EDWARDS MOUNDS

Ranging from one-quarter to one-third of a mile east of Mr. Schmidt's Mounds are several tumuli on the land of Mr. Edwards. In No. 24, a rather small mound, was found the skeleton shown in Plate IX. This was at a depth of four feet, was extended, and all the bones were present and in position. There were some flint chips and two or three flint knives near the head, also some large fragments of broken pottery. The base of the mound was about a foot below the present surface. A trench some sixty feet in length and twenty feet wide was run through the structure. Throughout the soil was scattered broken pottery.

East of this, distant about four hundred feet, is another mound, No. 25, about seven feet in height. We dug a trench through the center and sunk eight or ten test pits, finding no burials but discovered scales of copper on the base line. About one-third of this mound remains to be explored.

Since the above was written, much of the Edwards tract has been taken over by a commercial corporation and a large horse-racing track built and various structures erected. We have not seen the mounds, but are informed they have been much damaged.

#### No. 56. JESSE RAMEY MOUND

This is about twenty feet in height at the present time, the base diameter some three hundred feet. It is the second mound di-

rectly south of Monks. It is not quite clear whether this was originally an oblong mound or of the pyramid type since it has been cultivated for many years. Some twenty-five men were employed in the work and a trench sixty-five feet in length and ten feet deep was extended from near the base on the south side to a line some distance from the center. Then test pits were sunk and post augers used. Five or six feet farther down (a total depth of fourteen to sixteen feet) we came upon rather soft, dark earth quite different from the clay and gumbo of which most of the mounds are composed. It resembled the earth found about burials in the several mounds of the Hopewell group. There were a few scales of copper, and some fragments of highly finished pottery. That is, the fragments recovered indicate the finer pottery such as accompanies burials. This mound was tested during our first season. At a subsequent visit the Ramey family did not care to have it explored. Now that it is State property, it is recommended that thorough exploration be undertaken.

#### MOUND No. 64

This lies to the extreme south of the group, fully a mile from Monks Mound, and many years ago was considerably damaged by the construction of the Baltimore & Ohio and Pennsylvania Railroads which pass on either side. Some of the earth was utilized in grading tracks. It is stated by older residents that the Baltimore & Ohio construction crew removed some two-thirds of the structure, and found a stone pipe, said to represent an eagle, about twenty inches in length. Diligent inquiry fails to indicate the present location of this specimen. The structure is composed of very heavy, dark gumbo and although eight or ten test pits six to ten feet in depth were dug by our crew, no pipes, skeletons, or other objects were uncovered.

Several mounds south of the National Highway were tested somewhat superficially with our eight-inch augers. Most of them are composed of very hard gumbo and there was no indication of burials, although our tests should not be considered as final.

#### THE SAWMILL MOUND, No. 39

Reference to Fig. 1, our map will indicate that on Rameys' land (northwest from the barn) is Mound No. 39, which is designated by local people as the Sawmill Mound. It is, as near

as we could determine without actual survey, two hundred forty feet by two hundred forty feet in extent, a square mound, with level summit. South of it six hundred feet is a large oval mound, No. 41, twenty-five feet high. The original form may have been either pyramidal or oval. No one knows. We think a long, low platform existed between the Sawmill Mound and the first one to the south, No. 77. On the north side of the Sawmill Mound (No. 39) is the old bed of Cahokia Creek, and on that side the mound appears to be eighteen or nineteen feet



Design on a fragment of pottery

high, whereas to the south there is a more gradual slope. To the eye the mound does not appear to be over seven or eight feet high when one looks northward.

The name was given long ago, since sometime between 1850 and 1860 a mill boiler exploded, killing twelve to fifteen men, who were buried in a small mound south of the turnpike, probably Mound No. 73, or possibly No. 47. This circumstance should be remembered in case some future explorers find well preserved skeletons with traces of wooden coffins about them.

It is not necessary to present a map of the burials along the southern slope of the Sawmill Mound (No. 39). Extending in a somewhat irregular row, or line, for about thirty feet east and west, eight were found, and numbered four to eleven. The first four of these burials were headed north, the next three south, and No. 11, northeast. Nos. 4, 5, and 6 lay in black soil at a depth of about thirty inches. The surrounding area for a distance of several hundred feet was tested carefully and disturbed ground extended down for a depth of as much as three feet, in-

dicating an extensive village site. Black pottery predominated, and a few red fragments were observed.

Just south of No. 39 is a small mound (No. 77), on the slope of which, down two feet, was discovered a small bowl-like mass of hard, burnt clay. Although broken somewhat, it appeared to be circular in form, about twenty inches in diameter, or sixty inches around the curvature. No complete measurement could be made, yet the rim was well defined. In the cavity, where the base should have been, was a large lump of galena blackened by fire, also some pulverized galena. The lump weighed fully eight pounds and the powdered galena was about a quart in quantity. There was a pottery bowl, seven or eight inches in diameter and three inches high, with this deposit, and a shallow dish very flat, like a plate, of rather thick clay, also an oval stone on which were distinct markings or lines (Plate XVIII, Fig. 5). There were several ordinary hammer stones, and a small jar, almost crucible-like. This is dark brown, well made, stands about four inches in height, and the base is unusually thick and heavy. The jar is shown in Fig. 5, Plate XVII.

The work continued along the southern slope of Mound No. 39, and with skeleton No. 9, a young person, was a small toy vessel, about two inches in diameter, near the head (Plate XVII, Fig 4). At the right of skeleton No. 8 was a blackened bone object, probably an awl; also an entire deer jaw bone, in the point of which had been cut a groove, thus forming a small chisel or gouge. On the east side of this mound we ran a trench thirty-five feet in length, and five feet deep, but no burials were encountered. A pit was sunk in the center, fourteen by fifteen feet. This was dug down sixteen feet, then the post augers put down three and one-half to four feet farther. In the extreme base was found a heavy wet clay. The mound was stratified as follows:

Mixed earth.....	4 feet	Dark streak.....	3 inches
Dark earth.....	10 inches	Yellow earth.....	1 foot
Yellow earth.....	2 feet	Mixed earth.....	2 feet
Dark streak.....	4 inches	Dark earth.....	3 feet
Yellow earth.....	18 inches		

The layers in the Sawmill Mound were not even; in the northwest corner they radiated from a cone formation—dipping to the southeast or east. Yet when we were down about ten feet they appeared to be more horizontal. On the south side of the trench was a heavy black layer.



Some fragments of pottery (Plate XXVII, Fig. 1) also chips and spalls were found scattered throughout the structure. A peculiar clay effigy of a mammal head (Plate XXIII, Fig. 7), an awl cut from the lower jaw of a deer (Plate XXV, Fig. 13), and a rare shell effigy cut from a river mussel (Plate XXIII, Fig. 2), were also found in this mound. The auger borings in the south side of the pit showed heavy blue clay, along with the gray.

While some workmen sank the pit, others continued searching for burials. They found a number of disturbed burials, or rather fragmentary ones, much broken. These were scattered throughout the soil two and one-half to four and one-half feet in depth and without regularity. Probably Dr. Patrick or Mr. McAdams had dug here, since the soil seemed soft and disturbed. Below all the burials we sank test pits several feet in depth.

Skeleton No. 11 lay extended head northeast (Plate XXIX, Fig. 2). It was quite well preserved. An ordinary jar lay near the right hand, and a bowl near the left knee (Plate XVII, Fig. 6). A shell gorget and a bone knife were also found with this skeleton (Plate XXIII, Fig. 1; Plate XXV, Fig. 8).

While part of the men were working under the writer's direction, Mr. Seever took a crew and prospected two low mounds west of No. 48. In Mound No. 80 he ran a trench about six feet in width, and fifty in length, finding a large number of potsherds, bones, and burnt clay, and village site material. He also went more than a mile up Canteen Creek and prospected both sides of the stream for a distance of half a mile. The drainage canal system inaugurated by the County Commissioners some time ago has so changed conditions that it was impossible for him to make further observations. He says, "I find that the old bottom lands of Cahokia and Canteen creeks have been filled in by wash in flood time from five to ten feet, thus obliterating some low mounds that were in existence, and covered up the deposits mentioned as having been seen by Charles Rau in the 1860's."

#### MOUNDS NOS. 19, 20, AND 21

Probing the lesser mounds indicated burials north of Mound No. 33, and reference to the large map will indicate that there are seven mounds in a line east and west. Three of these, Nos. 19, 20, and 21, are so near together that the edges overlap. This

is probably due to cultivation of the soil. The original heights of these structures are unknown, but we assume that No. 20 was the largest. No. 19 is at present about five feet in height, No. 20 about four feet, and No. 21 is about three feet in altitude. Most of the burials were in No. 20, or on the slope of it. Skeleton No. 12 was found on the southern slope of No. 20 at a depth of about three feet, and was fairly well preserved. The right leg had been much elevated and we found the tibia and femur at least a foot above the rest of the body; yet it had not been disturbed by the plow, and this curious form of burial must have been intentional.

At the head of this skeleton were four pots shown in Plate XXX, Fig. 1: first the bowl, next the jar, then a dish in which a fine, dipper-like object was placed. This is decorated with sun symbols and has a long, slender, projecting handle. The right arm of the skeleton was in normal position to the elbow, but the ulna and radius lay across the abdomen, and the left leg was bent at the knee. All of this pottery was perfect, but there was nothing else in the grave (Plate XVII, Figs. 1-3). Skeleton No. 33 was doubled up, the knees being drawn up to the abdomen. There was disturbed earth just east of it, and a detached skull two feet north. Numerous test pits showed several fragmentary human skeletons, and much village site debris.

About one hundred fifty feet from the west end of our trench, at the depth of three feet, were many fragments of spades and hoes, or digging tools of reddish chert. Why these were all broken we do not know. There were enough fragments to comprise fifteen or twenty of the tools, and about them were ashes and burnt earth. Fifteen feet beyond was a mass of pulverized galena lying in ashes.

Our total trench was extended a distance of over two hundred fifty feet from the center of Mound No. 19 well into No. 21. Much village site material occurred through the soil and extended in places as deep as seven feet. Naturally, the greatest depths at which village site debris occurred were near the highest parts of the mounds. Plate XXXI, Fig. 2, shows the position of two skeletons. The burial in the foreground had a vessel at the head; the skull rested upon a small sea shell and there were traces of pigment (in small lumps) near the face. Between burials 21 and 22 was found an ordinary cooking pot, lying five feet from the nearest skeleton. With three or four of the other skeletons we found ordinary clay dishes or bowls

usually placed by the head. None of the skeletons were well preserved although two or three were taken out fairly entire and lent to Dr. A. J. Terry of the Medical Department of Washington University. It is not necessary to record all the depths of the skeletons; they varied from two and one-half feet to six and one-half feet, and save one or two were all extended. Eight of them lay with the heads to the north, three with the heads to the east, two with the heads west, five with the heads south, and others northwest and southeast (Text Fig. 2). Whether pottery originally placed by the natives had been re-

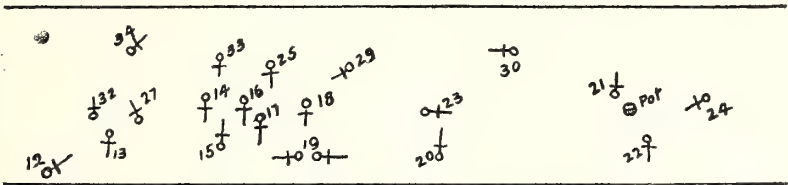


FIG. 2.—Position of skeletons in trench cut through Mounds Nos. 19, 20, 21.

moved by McAdams, Patrick, or others, we do not know. It is possible that no pottery was placed with these interments, except such as we recovered. Assuming that such statement is correct, about one-third of the burials were accompanied by vessels or pottery. Two-thirds were without pottery. The exception is with No. 12 which was accompanied by four vessels as has been stated. A fine needle was found with skeleton No. 30 (Plate XXVIII, Fig. 2) and an awl made from the tibia of a deer with skeleton No. 18 (Plate XXV, Fig. 10).

Dr. F. S. Smith, of Nevada, Iowa, was present during the removal of these skeletons, and attempted to make some observations on the remains, as they lay in the ground. He made no measurements and his notes are mere field suggestions.

No. 16. Female.

No. 18. Probably female, decayed, and therefore sex uncertain.

No. 20. Young woman eighteen to twenty-five years.

No. 21. Female; pelvis very light, the brim typical form. Antero-posterior diameter about four and one-half inches. The iliac crest very thin and the roughened crest for attachment of muscles not well developed. All long bones small and delicate. The femora typical form and meeting of the lower leg at the usual angle for women.

"It is impossible to make any accurate measurements but the thin light bones, and typical size and form of the clavicles all point to the above numbered skeletons as being females."

All the interments appear to be on the same level or base line, and were probably village rather than mound burials. That most of them appear to be women is interesting, as usually both sexes are found in the cemeteries.

### THE JAMES RAMEY MOUND, No. 33

*Spring Operations, 1922.*—It was decided to select a large tumulus and examine as much of it as possible. This structure adjoined a pyramid or “temple mound” and both seemed to occupy a central position in ancient Cahokia times.

There was originally a deep depression between Mounds Nos. 33 and 34, so the Rameys informed me, which had been filled in by dragging the earth from the summit of the mound down the steep slopes into this depression. The mound was conical originally, and according to all witnesses probably fifteen feet higher than at the time of our exploration. This would give it a height of thirty-eight feet. The adjoining mound to the west, No. 32, is a temple or pyramid structure with flattened summit, and is so shown in the maps and old records. No. 33 was supposed to be a burial structure, since it came to a “point,” and local tradition is persistent in so describing this tumulus.

Testing elsewhere was deferred and fourteen men were put to work on the north side at the lowest slope. We began at a point which appeared to the eye to be four or five feet above the general surface, yet we had gone down over seven feet before we found the base line. Our trench extended to the south.

When Curator F. C. Baker of the University of Illinois came to visit our survey, on April 3, we had run the trench thirty feet south in the mound. The face of the trench, or south wall, was twelve feet high. The width of the pit was twenty-seven feet east and west. A number of marine shells, a few bone awls, and the usual broken pottery and animal bones were found. While Curator Baker was present we sank a number of pits with the post augers and brought up bones from the lower layers or bottom. These bones were observed to be of brownish green color. Later, during the research in this mound, the same peculiarity was observed, and all bones below the eighteen-foot level were coated and discolored. Chemical analysis will determine the nature of this action, which has seldom been observed in other mounds. On the seventh of April the trench wall, being nearly fifteen feet in height, became dangerous and

the earth caved in frequently. It was therefore sloped down by the men and four teams were put to work scraping the earth out and depositing it on the slopes to the north and south. Teams and scrapers were continued at work until about the twenty-second of April when we again resorted to hand work to complete the trench.

Our total area excavated was about one hundred feet north and south, and thirty-five feet east and west. Some area was lost since it became necessary to slope the walls (twenty-three feet high) to prevent injury to our men. East and west, on top, the opening was about forty-five feet—the base line narrower, as stated. In Text Fig. 12, Part II, is shown a cross section made by Dr. Leighton. The scale indicates the thickness of the strata.

For some two weeks the men dug until the base line was exposed. On the west side of the trench opposite stakes 110 to 130 were a number of post holes three to five inches in diameter. The posts had decayed but traces of wood remained. There had been no fire at this point. The holes appeared to be part of a large circular edifice or wigwam, and were found at a depth of about fourteen feet from the summit. Lying near one of them was a long double-pointed flint knife which is shown in Plate XXVI, Fig. 1. In the center of the cut was found the circular trench, and the circular post holes, and the altars or basins shown in Text Figs. 3 and 4. These lay upon the base line about twenty-three feet from the summit.

Nothing just like these circles and basins have been previously found in mounds so far as we are aware. That is, there have been more perfect altars, and post holes arranged in circular form but not all of them in one place. Plate XXXI, Fig. 1 shows the excavation, the circles being in the foreground; Plate XXXI, Fig. 3 the two circles and depressions to the right; and Plate XXX, Fig. 2 a close view of the depressions or altars and the two circles. As the holes would not show clearly in a negative, corn stalk stubs were inserted to bring into sharper relief the holes. The men carefully hand troweled the entire space for a distance of twenty-five feet. In the center were two burnt basins or depressions which were filled with ashes.

Mr. Cowen has called them altars in his drawing, and they may be such. They vary from seventeen to twenty-six inches in diameter and the depressions were four to seven inches in

depth. They were not burned hard as are the Ohio altars. The one south of the circle contained nothing. North of the circle were two shown near the top in Text Fig. 3, and these were of different form, rather shallow, and three-fourths circular. Instead of the circle being complete, the depression in one was extended to the east and in the other to the north. When uncovered, they were not unlike crude pans in appearance, the handles being rather short and the cavity in them not as deep as in the main body of the depression.

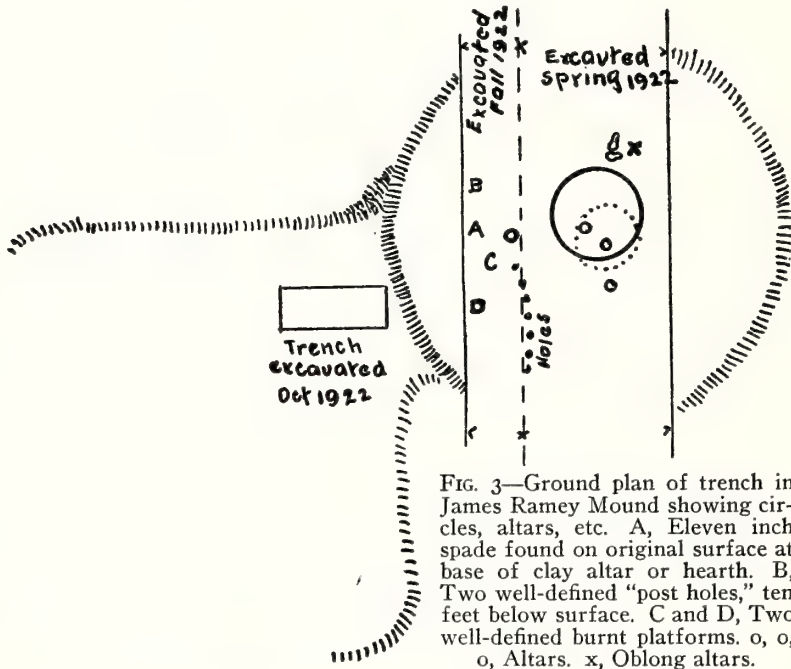


FIG. 3.—Ground plan of trench in James Ramey Mound showing circles, altars, etc. A, Eleven inch spade found on original surface at base of clay altar or hearth. B, Two well-defined "post holes," ten feet below surface. C and D, Two well-defined burnt platforms. o, o, Altars. x, Oblong altars.

The trench was about three inches wide and twenty feet in diameter. It was nearly a true circle (Text Fig. 4). To form it the Indians dug out the earth to a depth of several inches and then filled it with dark soil so that the contrast was unmistakable. There was nothing in this trench—not even ashes or charcoal. From the center of the sun symbol and extending south was a circle of post holes two to three inches in diameter. Probably saplings had been inserted and then the primitive wigwam burned, as there were great quantities of charred

stubs and charcoal. In the center of this wigwam circle was a burnt basin and to the northwest lay another. Ashes from these two depressions were taken by Mr. Alfred C. Carr and analyzed for Mr. V. C. Turner of the Scullin Steel Company by Mr. L. Z. Slater.

I enclose herewith complete qualitative and quantitative analysis of the samples you gave me. You will note there is a large quantity of silica.

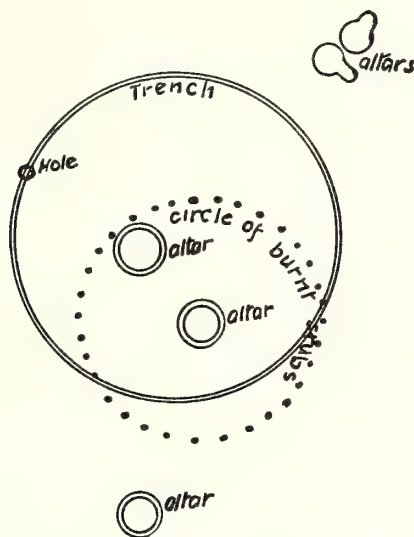


FIG. 4—Plan of circular trench, altars, etc., in James Ramey Mound.

We could not account for this until the specimens were examined under a microscope and then it was found that small quantities of clay or sand had been washed down into and between the fibres of the specimens. It was impossible to take these off and therefore we have assumed that the silica was the particles which adhered to the fibre, together with part of the iron and alumina. The phosphoric acid, calcium carbonate, and magnesium carbonate, together with some of the alumina led us to assume that specimen must have been bone at one time, at least it could not have been wood-ash or charcoal.

There was also another interesting discovery and that is that under fire test there is a trace of lithium. This leads us to believe that there was tobacco present among the bones and clay, as this lithium is always present in tobacco and it is hardly possible that it would be in any other substance that was placed in the receptacle where the samples were found.

V. C. TURNER

Following is the analysis of sample taken from James Ramey Mound:

Silica (Si).....	62.10
Iron and alumina (Fe & Al).....	25.15
mostly oil 203	
Phosphoric acid (P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> ).....	.49
Calcium carbonate (CaCO <sub>3</sub> ).....	10.55
Magnesium carbonate (MgCO <sub>3</sub> ).....	1.66
	99.95

Fire test shows trace of Lithium.

L. Z. SLATER

Through an area of twenty-five feet, having as a center the altars, was a floor not very hard burnt, and yet beyond question a level surface on which fires had been built.

Sections of gas pipe were screwed together and with these the men were able to test to a depth of fifteen or twenty feet with the augers. They thoroughly tested the mound to the east and south of these circles. It was then thought that possibly there might be burials in the structure and that the altars and sun symbols occupied the center portion of the mound area. However, no burials could be discovered.

The various artifacts found during the course of exploration were kept in cigar boxes according to the levels at which they occurred. There was no particular difference in material to be noted except, possibly, the best pottery—that is, the red ware and the sherds indicating thin, well-made vessels—was found from fifteen to twenty feet below the surface. Near the bottom there appeared to be more village site material, and at about ten feet from the summit the preponderance of fragments indicating ordinary cooking vessels. Types of pottery fragments are shown on Plates XXI and XXII.

Numerous photographs were taken at various stages of the work. About the first of May the walls were thrown in, and with the consent of the owners the mound was abandoned until fall. When we left, the excavation had the appearance of a crater about one hundred feet in length, sixty feet in width, and twelve feet deep in the center.

*September-October Operations, 1922.*—On arrival at the James Ramey Mound in the fall of 1922, although but four months had elapsed since the abandonment of the work in the spring, we noted that vegetation had sprung up in the depres-



sion. Visitors had attempted to dig, but fortunately we had left the mound in such shape that they could do no damage.

It was decided to work toward the west and extend the trench in that direction. Text Fig. 3 presents the total work done on the mound. When we completed operations the latter part of October, the total area excavated was one hundred twenty feet north and south and about fifty-five feet east and west. As the Temple Mound, No. 32, adjoined this structure, a deep pit was sunk to the bottom of that mound. The pit was about twenty-five feet from the western edge of our trench and was fourteen by eight feet in diameter at the bottom. This is shown in Text Fig. 3. While the teams lowered the mound to the bottom, the men sank the pit mentioned, and found the base line down about seventeen feet. It was not thought necessary to excavate the space between the west wall of No. 33 and this pit, although the augers were put down at many points. The usual village sites debris extended clear to the bottom, but on the base line was a very heavy deposit of dark soil and ashes a few inches in thickness and here we observed much more village site material than in the other mound. It would appear that the Temple Mound was erected over a site occupied by a wigwam, for the mound was built directly on this part of the village site and none of the refuse had been cleaned up. Some thirty-seven-inch auger holes were put to the bottom of No. 32, and decayed bones, burnt earth, etc., were found at several points. It might be advisable to trench this mound at some future time.

On October 12 but one team was retained and a party of sixteen men dug out the remainder of Mound No. 33 by hand. Another of these burnt basins was found near stake 130. This was about twenty inches in diameter and about five or six inches deep and was filled with charcoal. The west side of our trench, being somewhat beyond the center of the mound, was not over nineteen feet in depth. Stratification was not as well marked as observed last spring. There was a good deal of gumbo in the west wall and it was not necessary to slope the bank very much. A thin layer of pure sand about half an inch in thickness, which we had traced continuously from the north side of the old trench, extended in the mound but seemed to disappear a little south of the center.

The large post holes observed last spring in the west side of our trench did not continue regularly. Several more were ob-

served but there was no special regularity and we therefore concluded that they did not represent a circular dwelling.

During the course of sinking the trench, part of a human femur some six inches in length, a vertebra, and two teeth were found, but there were no burials. Near stake 120, at a depth of seventeen feet, was found a large flint spade about a foot in length. This is shown in Fig. 5, on Plate XXVI. Nothing very important was found during the course of exploration save that a heavy layer of charcoal, in which was bark, extended to the south and southwest between stakes 130 and 140. When we ceased operations this layer continued in the walls, but as we had already spent a great deal of money on this mound the pit was not enlarged.

There was an even, burnt floor, and covered by a thin layer of white ash and above that large pieces of charcoal and charred wood. We estimated this layer to be some three feet above the base of the mound. At several points on the burnt floor were small, flat stones, irregularly shaped and apparently limestone, which had been subjected to heat. There were also many calcareous clay concretions. This platform or burnt floor with accompanying ashes and charcoal, we hand troweled for a distance of nearly twenty feet. It still continued in the wall of our trench toward the southwest when we ceased work.

*Conclusions on James Ramey Mound.*—The circles have been called sun symbols, though they may not be such, but that is our opinion. What led the Indians to construct such a mound, we do not know. It is often difficult for us to appreciate the aboriginal point of view. That certain ceremonies were here enacted we may believe, but the nature of these still remains a mystery.

A few notable objects found in the James Ramey Mound are shown on the plates. Two clay discs on Plate XXVII, Figs. 2, 4. Peculiar pottery designs on Plate XXIII, Figs. 8, 9. Two bird head effigies on same plate, Figs. 5, 6. Two good bone awls on Plate XXV, Figs. 3, 7. A peculiarly cut leg bone of Wapiti or American elk is shown in Fig. 12, on same Plate. A very finely-cut and decorated gorget shell of the Spike River mussel (*Elliptio dilatatus*), with evenly notched edges, probably used as a nose or ear ornament, is shown in Fig. 3, on Plate XXIII. It was found at a depth of twenty feet, near stake 110. Broken projectile points and arrow heads are shown in Figs. 1, 6-8, 11, on Plate XXVIII. Marine mollusks, beads, and ornaments are

shown on Plate XXIV. Most of the Cahokia beads are flat and not cylindrical.

### THE JONDRO MOUND, No. 86

This was not put on the map which we inserted in our previous report (Vol. 19, No. 35, University of Illinois publications). In fact, Patrick, Van Court, and the other surveyors seem to have left out a number of small mounds. It lies nearly a mile and a half west of Monks, and is almost circular, being one hundred forty by one hundred thirty feet. A diagram is shown of it in Text Fig. 5. The surface is rather irregular and we supposed



FIG. 5—Cross section of Tusant Jondro Mound. Sec. 34, Twp. Edgemont, St. Clair Co. Position of burials is indicated, the first burial being seventy-five feet from north edge of mound.

originally the mound was conical and that it had been worked down during cultivation in the field, but the owner, Mr. Tusant Jondro, informs us that while his father had a garden on one side and he set out an orchard, the eastern half had never been cultivated. Therefore the structure, which now varies from four to six feet in elevation, could not have been much higher than at present. It might have served a double purpose, that is, for burials and later as an elevation on which wigwams were set.

Mr. William J. Seever had charge of the work, and spent some time running a trench north and south through the entire mound, and another trench from the south end of the mound, northwest for twenty feet. He found twenty-four burials, and enough detached burials, or rather bodies so decayed that only a portion of skeletons were observed, to account for sixteen or seventeen more. In the north half of the mound there are probably many more burials. Mr. Jondro states that his father uncovered burials during the operations incident to tree planting or gardening. The cross section in Fig. 5 shows that at the north end there was an original mound four feet high, composed of buckshot gumbo. This was extremely hard digging, and nothing was found therein. In fact, in our excavations,

survey members never found burials or much village site debris in gumbo soil, except the Chucallo Mound and this was not all gumbo.

The skeletons were headed in various directions, and no uniformity as to points of the compass was observed by the Indians. Excepting one skeleton noted on the map, no objects accompanied any of the burials (Text Fig. 6). Not enough pot-

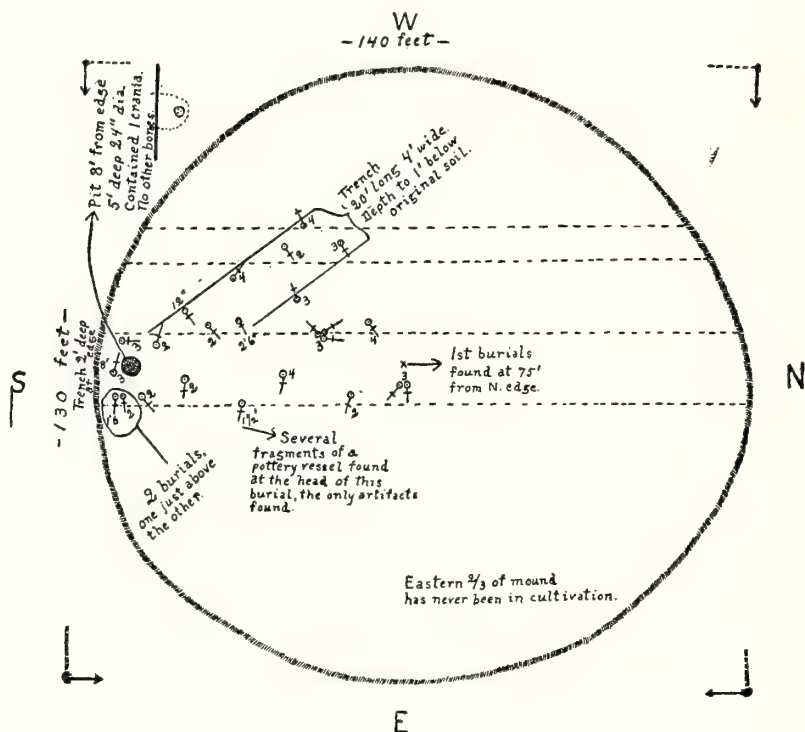


FIG. 6—Field plan of the Jondro Mound.

tery fragments were found with this burial to enable restoration. Every skeleton was badly decayed; in many instances it was impossible to remove even one-third of a femur or tibia.

About two hundred feet north of the mound is a depression from which earth and gumbo were taken for this mound; a similar one lies one hundred seventy-five feet south of the mound.

## SAM CHUCALLO MOUND

This is the last of the several tumuli in the corporate limits of East St. Louis and is not on our map. It lies on the edge of a deep depression where the earth has been removed by the Pennsylvania Railroad to make a filling. Cahokia Creek is one hundred yards to the north. The distance from Sam's Mound to Monks Mound is something over three miles. The Pennsylvania excavation removed the western edge of the mound, up to where it was about four feet in height. The owner did not wish a large group of men to be put to work so he and another man were employed to dig a trench some seventy feet in length, ten feet deep, and eight feet in width (March-April, 1922). The mound was of very heavy gumbo, and unpromising. Very little village site material occurred save now and then a hammer stone and animal bones. A large flint spade was taken from the seven-foot level, somewhat east of the center of the mound. At the nine-foot level, near the center, Sam discovered a skeleton surrounded by a dome-shaped mass of very black gumbo. The soil on either side and above this mass was somewhat lighter. Dr. M. M. Leighton of the University of Illinois was present when part of this skeleton was uncovered. After Dr. Leighton departed, the workmen uncovered seven other skeletons lying on a little burnt bench about a foot above the bottom of the mound, or nine feet from the surface. This find was made just west of the skeleton mentioned. Above the burials one could clearly observe a small mound of tough gumbo perhaps four feet in height. Apparently the burials were covered by this, and the rest of the mound added afterwards. A brick building (the residence of the owner) to the south somewhat disturbed the southern edge of the mound. In making the street a little of the east edge was removed, and the trolley tracks are flanked by a low bank on the north side of the mound. It is, therefore, difficult to give accurate measurements but we judge the mound to have been about one hundred fifty by one hundred twenty feet in diameter.

The seven skeletons referred to were bunched burials, all crushed by the heavy gumbo and many of the bones powdered so that they appeared like sawdust. This form of decay had not previously been observed, and several boxes full of disintegrated bones were taken for preservation. There were no objects with the burials. Undermining the bank to the south

brought into view the feet of two more skeletons—better preserved and not bunched burials. Although badly broken, as stated, the bones seemed unusually heavy.

Work on this mound was abandoned until the next season when the owner was again employed, and he and another workman excavated an area approximately thirty by forty feet and some eleven feet in depth. Near the center of the tumulus they found six skeletons, placed in a row, side by side, heads to the south. Each body was extended, arms at the sides, feet not crossed. Just below this was a heavy layer of slightly burned earth on which there were traces of bark or matting very much decayed. It was impossible to save much of it although parafin and white shellac were applied. Some small samples were secured and sent to Urbana. None of the crania or long bones could be removed for study. There were no objects with the deposit. The distance from these bodies to the surface was ten feet.

#### PITTSBURG LAKE CEMETERY

On the shores of Pittsburg Lake, about six miles southeast of Cahokia, a large cemetery was discovered when a new automobile road, known as the Louisiana Boulevard, was constructed a few years ago. Mr. H. Braun was present when the teams and scrapers at work on the boulevard uncovered the remains. He states there were thirty or forty burials and he secured some fifty-one pottery vessels.

To ascertain whether this cemetery was of the Cahokia culture, we visited the site, paid the owner for two acres of wheat and began testing. We found a total of thirteen skeletons in a space some twenty by twenty-five feet. With them were eleven pottery vessels, six of which were whole. The cemetery was thoroughly trenched by us for several days, six workmen being employed, but we could discover no other interments.

The skeletons (save one) were badly decayed, due to the character of the soil, and most of them were near the surface. Our field notes are as follows:

Skeleton 38. Head south. Extended. Depth three feet.

Skeleton 39. Bowl, set with rim upwards.

Skeleton 40. Two pots. A detached skull. Three awls were laid across a wide dish. Head south. Dish against the jar two inches from jar. One foot from surface. Well preserved. Body extended on back. Bone arrow point on face.

Skeleton 40A. Depth three feet. Head east, and badly crushed.

Skeleton 41. Skeleton south. Decayed and broken, twenty-four inches from surface.

Skeleton 42. Red pot with decayed skeleton. Pot in dish. Effigy head broken off. Some red paint. Twenty inches down.

Skeleton 43. Small pot by head of a child. Very badly decayed. Eighteen inches down.

Skeleton 44. Young person, two pots. Head north. Badly decayed. Down eighteen inches.

Skeleton 46. Five feet deep. Legs drawn up. Two photos. No objects.

In several instances, near the head of the body was a large flat stone set in the grave. There were several of these, and they were smaller than the stone slabs forming the well known box graves of the middle South. Mr. Braun stated that this peculiarity was observed in many of the burials destroyed by the road construction crew. All pottery found was typical of the middle South, and did not exhibit any of the Cahokia decorations. A bone awl found with skeleton No. 39 is shown in Fig. 4 on Plate XXV.

#### MOUNDS NOS. 14 AND 79

Except the Kunnemann Mound, none lying north of Cahokia Creek had been examined by us. Therefore, in April, we trenched two of them.

*Number 14.*—The field notes state, "About one-third mile north of Monks is a mound lying between old Cahokia and the present drainage canal. Years ago a road through the swamp passed along the crest of this structure. There is a depression in the center of this mound from end to end. Dimensions, north and south one hundred eighty feet, east and west one hundred ten feet. About five feet high. Composed of heavy gumbo. Very hard digging. Put eight men to work. Sunk ten pits each four feet deep; also used post augers for three and one-half feet. A few pieces of stone, no pottery; some broken bones."

*Mackie Mound, No. 79.*—This is about one and one-fourth miles west of Monks Mound and is on the bank of old Cahokia Creek. It is covered by a heavy oak grove, has never been plowed, and is about one hundred thirty feet north and south and ten feet high. It is surrounded on three sides by a swamp and there is a long low platform, or apron, extending about one hundred fifty feet to the east. This platform varies from three to five feet high. A trench was extended a distance of about thirty feet in the mound down to within a few feet of the base

line, then the post augers were brought into service. Numbers of pits were sunk three or four feet in depth. With the exception of a few scales of flint or chert and one pottery fragment, absolutely nothing was found. The mound was composed of the hardest kind of buckshot gumbo, with no sign of stratification. It is clear that no village existed at the point from whence the earth was taken to build this mound, as there are no broken artifacts to be observed in the soil.

#### SULLIVAN'S MOUNDS

Persons frequently called our attention to two mounds on Signal Hill. These command a view of the American Bottoms and in an air line are some four miles south of the largest tumulus—Monks. We secured permission to excavate from Judge J. D. Sullivan, both structures being in his yard. The largest one when viewed and measured from its base, is a low conical mound, ten feet in height, some ninety feet in diameter, nearly circular at the base line, very symmetrical in the contour line, not differing, when viewed from the slope on which it is erected, from similar ones in the Cahokia Mound region (Text Fig. 7). Excavations of a trench some six feet wide through the east and west axis, carried down to and below its base, revealed, however, a very unusual mound construction or building. Instead of beginning upon the original surface and upbuilding from there, as they usually did, the builders of this tumulus reversed the procedure, by excavating a bowl-like depression apparently the diameter or size of the structure afterwards to be erected. This excavation, rather uneven on the floor line, a few inches in depth at its outer edges, increasing in depth until at or near the center, it attained a maximum depth of eighteen inches. Into this bowl-like depression, numerous oval and circular pits were dug, in depth from two or three to eighteen inches; in diameter from twelve inches, to the largest encountered, of five feet two inches. Nine of these pits were located in the floor of the trench (with traces of others on outer sides of the trench); these were thoroughly "cleaned out," and accompanied clearly definite strata of white or gray ashes, mixed with charcoal, in very dark and loose loamy soil, numerous pieces of broken pottery or earthenware, some animal and bird bones, quantities of small irregular broken stones showing discoloration from heat, one battered and broken grooved granite axe, several defective



celts, hammer stones, and *Unio* shells mingled with the dark colored earth of the pits.

From one pit were taken two highly specialized bone implements some four inches long (Plate XXV, Figs. 5, 6). From another, two perforated bone beads, and from another a fragment of quartz crystal, and a small specimen of worked hematite.

Apparently, the entire floor or bowl-like depression of this

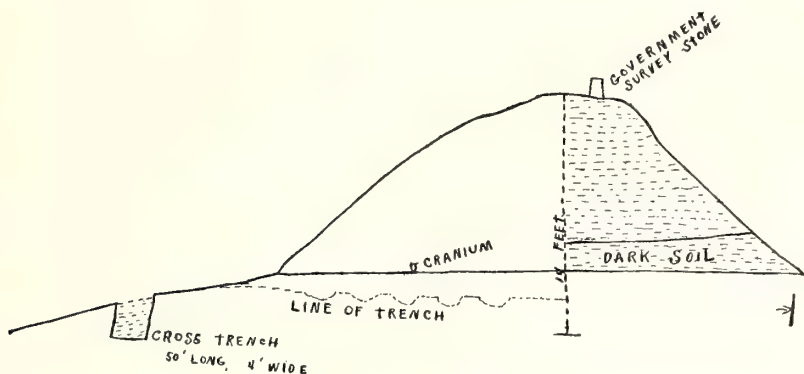


FIG. 7—Mound on bluffs east of East St. Louis, on Judge Sullivan's land.  
Excavated Oct. 5, 6, 9, 10, 1922.

structure contains similar pits or depressions, since edges of others were noted in the trench.

The loess formation, of which these uplands largely consist, being of an almost bright yellow color, the least discoloration or excavation therein, and subsequent filling in of foreign material is instantly and plainly discernable and easily followed.

Seemingly these pits had been used either as hearths, or for purposes of cremation. Then the bowl-like depression was filled in with a dark soil or earth to the original surface and on top of this the mound was erected, the latter being a mixture of light and dark colored earths.

Directly east of this mound some two hundred fifty feet was a smaller tumulus removed some years since during the erection of a residence. Numerous pottery fragments were taken therefrom, and an entire pot or vase; it could not be ascertained if there were any human remains.

## THE KRUGER BONE BANK

At the point marked burial and village site on the map near the lower left hand corner, is a long low ridge flanking a depression in which, in former times, there was considerable water. Old residents state that before the present drainage system was inaugurated, there were many fish in this depression, and that it was connected with the pond to the east.

Along the sandy ridge burials had been made by Indians, and both Mr. Kruger and the owner who preceded him had dug up skeletons. He permitted excavations and about a dozen men sank test pits here for two days. None of the burials were more than three feet in depth, and most of them within twenty inches of the surface. There were fragmentary skeletons indicating disturbances. Dr. James Terry of Washington University took one or two of the best ones to the medical school for observation. The rest were left in the ground. We did not excavate the entire area as the burials were accompanied by no objects and did not appear to be of special importance. Some sixteen bodies were found.

It is well to remark in passing that these scattered burials and little cemeteries are found throughout the entire Cahokia area.

## MRS. TIPPETTS' MOUND, NO. 61

This is an oval mound located between the two ponds on land owned by Mrs. William Tippetts. Externally it is rather promising, and as it is shaped not unlike altar mounds of the Ohio Valley, the survey decided to test it. Much to our surprise we found it composed of exceedingly heavy, black gumbo. Two pits were sunk and by means of the augers we tested to the base, a distance of twenty feet. Very little in the way of material was encountered. The mound appeared to be unstratified. The ground was so hard it required the united efforts of six strong workmen to put down six auger holes in three days time. Whether stratification or burials are to be found is problematical. We would suggest February to April as more favorable months for work in gumbo since winter rains have a tendency to soften the material.

## THE COLLINSVILLE-EDGEMONT BLUFFS

Flanking the east side of the American Bottoms are the high bluffs frequently referred to. McAdams, Patrick, and others

seem to have secured most of their better specimen (pipes, bicaves,<sup>2</sup> and long chipped objects) from graves, small mounds, or sites on these promontories. Local collectors affirm that the entire range of high land flanking the river from Alton to Cairo is one vast, ancient cemetery. Mr. E. W. Payne, whose agents have collected extensively in that region, estimate that thousands of various implements, ornaments, and utensils have here been gathered. Skeletons are plowed up every spring and fall. A thorough investigation of the remains on these bluffs should be made at some future time. Our work included an inspection of the bluffs for ten miles, but we attempted no excavations.

#### THE MITCHELL MOUNDS

March 15, 1923, Hon. W. E. Myer, Mr. Cowen, Mr. Seever, and myself went to Mitchell, Madison County, Illinois, to examine the group of mounds described in several publications, notably Volume 3, Bulletin No. 5, of the Buffalo Society of Natural Sciences in 1877, and D. I. Bushnell, Jr., in Volume 3, No. 1, Peabody Museum of American Archæology and Ethnology, Harvard University, May, 1904. Since remarkable discoveries had been made in the Mitchell Mounds at the time of both railroad and highway construction many years ago, and as these mounds are but eight miles north of Monks Mound, it was necessary that we make an inspection. The builders of the Mitchell Mounds may or may not have been of the same tribe as that responsible for Cahokia, and we desired to ascertain the facts.

Although a large crew was employed, for sometime we were unable to discover burials or any objects of consequence, and we were, therefore, dependent upon Dr. Howland's description of the finds of long ago. Before quoting him (p. 90), it is well that our field notes of the work at Mitchell be condensed and presented in this report.

The area occupied by the mounds is something like one-half mile in extent, and there were several heirs to the property, one or two of the ladies being abroad. However, through the kindness of Mr. Treckler, superintendent of the estate, we secured permission.

It has always been of interest to us to observe the variations in testimony regarding evidence of discovery given by several

---

<sup>2</sup>Often called discoidals.

people. We questioned a number of persons as to the finds. An elderly lady stated that she was a small girl when the country road was widened, and during the demolition of one of the mounds skeletons and numbers of chipped objects were discovered. Another observer stated that a very large number of bones were found both by the railroad crew and the road builders, that these were loaded on a flat car with the earth and general debris, and dumped into the outlet of Long Lake. Mr. McAdams's son states that his father secured some very fine specimens in flint, stone, and copper at the time two or three of the mounds were destroyed. We shall use Mr. Bushnell's map to refer to mounds, adopting his letters to designate them.

The survey, having read Dr. Howland's interesting description of the finds and having listened to various witnesses, entered upon the exploration the following day with great zest. First was dug Mound C, a small structure about six hundred feet north of Long Lake. Our exploration revealed no special stratification although there was a dark, irregular layer two or three feet from the surface and extending across the mound. Four hammerstones occurred near the surface but there were neither traces of burials, nor ashes, nor animal bones. The earth constituting the structure was probably taken from the adjacent surface, but at a time when there was no considerable village site as we did not find broken pottery, chips of chert, or other objects which are common at Cahokia.

Having secured permission from the Chicago & Alton, Wabash, and Big Four Railway Companies, we began the exploration of what remained of Mound A. So far as can be determined, the original structure was about two hundred sixty feet north and south and some twenty-five feet high. The results were disappointing. In fact, the exploration was carried on with difficulty as trains were continually passing and the space between the tracks was rather narrow. Yet a large crew of men was employed and spent an entire week excavating what remained of this famous mound. The elevations vary from one to about seven feet in height at the present time. Our observations were confined to two long narrow strips about six or seven feet in width, east and west, and about one hundred feet in length, north and south. Our total finds consisted of two decayed skeletons placed near each other on the base line, and distant but a few yards from the ends of the ties of the Big Four and Wabash tracks. None of the bones could be removed.

There were six triangular arrow points lying alongside one of the skeletons—no other objects. What little remained of this mound gave us some slight clue as to the method of construction. Apparently a layer of sand about two inches in thickness was laid down by the Indians, and the interments placed upon this. One hundred and fifty miles to the north a similar construction was followed by the Indians in certain of the mounds near Liverpool.

Mound G is drawn on Mr. Bushnell's plan as a square mound. These structures at Cahokia are known as temple mounds. The height is given by him as five feet, the length one hundred fifty feet and the width one hundred twenty-five feet. Continuous cultivation has altered the form so that the outline has been marred. We decided to excavate this mound carefully, and ran a trench from the south side northward to a distance of fifteen feet beyond the center. Our trench was thirty-five feet in width and we continued for some fifty-five feet. In places this mound appeared to be nearly six feet high, and for some distance on each side of the center we discovered a disturbed layer of some three feet below the surface, and varying from a few to ten inches in thickness. Under that was a heavy layer of black gumbo from eight to twelve inches thick which appeared to rest on the base. There were a few fragments of pottery scattered through the mound, some ashes and charcoal, but no burials, no animal bones, and no burned basin or altar.

On the completion of Mound G we held a consultation. We had now opened three of the Mitchell Mounds at considerable expense. We decided to test with our large augers three or four more mounds, concluding that if our augers were put down forty times in each mound, since they took up a seven-inch section of core, we would be able to secure information as to the construction, and in case there were burials in any one of the mounds, probably some of our test holes would encounter skeletons.

Mound E, a large one, is given on the map as ten and four-tenths feet high, circular, and two hundred sixty-seven feet diameter. In one of the pits, two feet from the surface, we found a flint spade about eight inches long. The augers brought up from other pits a few fragments of pottery. This mound did not appear to be stratified.

We crossed Long Lake and sunk pits and thirty auger holes in the long, low mound just north of the group. It is about ten

feet high at the present time. The testing resulted in no evidence of stratification and no burials.

Mound J was probably the largest of the group, and is given as sixteen and four-tenths feet in height, and the augers showed the base line to be down about eighteen feet. Thirty tests were made which required three days work on the part of five or eight men. Eighteen feet down, in the center, was a stone object of unknown character, and apparently rather large. Auger holes were put down all around this stone but we could not bring it up. It could have been removed had we dug a large pit eighteen feet in depth, but since nothing had been found in the other structures, it was thought inadvisable to trench Mound J. We are of the opinion that it was a stone spade. No special stratification was noted, and very little village site debris in this structure.

Mound D was tested somewhat superficially, the augers being put down twenty times with negligible results. This completed the exploration of the Mitchell group. It had been confidently predicted that copper and other objects would be found in these tumuli. Such flint objects and sherds of pottery as were found indicated prevailing Cahokia culture. The fields lying along Long Lake show few traces of occupation as a village site.

We may assume that the Mitchell Mounds, from the examination of the pottery fragments, are a part of the Cahokia culture. This brings up the question of the use of copper, and we, therefore, present a portion of Dr. Howland's paper (pp. 90-93).

#### WOOD RIVER MOUNDS

After testing at Mitchell, we decided to examine several mounds which lie on the crest of a ridge paralleling the old channel of the Mississippi River. This ridge varies from fifteen to twenty feet above the water, and the abandoned channel is now choked with vegetation. At the time the mounds were built, it is possible that the river flowed along the east side of the Bottoms for a mile or more from its present channel.

We began at the southern end of the group and worked northward. The first mound is four feet high, and eighty feet in length, with a diameter of about fifty feet. The property is owned by Dr. Poague. The trench was extended for a distance of about thirty feet to the base line. We found a few arrow-

heads and chips of flint near the surface, but nothing in the mound itself. Apparently, it had been disturbed.

Four hundred feet north, on the same ridge, is a mound owned by Messrs. Gerke and Lusk of Edwardsville. This mound is about six feet in height, ninety feet in length, north and south, and some fifty feet wide, and was tested by means of numerous pits. The base appears to rest on a level surface, and it would appear that the natives built fires and burned the ground for a space of some forty or fifty feet, over which area they heaped the mound, extending it for a considerable distance on either side. No burials and no objects were found. There was no stratification.

Mr. Frank Smith owns the property adjoining that of Messrs. Gerke and Lusk. There is a small elevation two hundred fifty feet north of the mound just described. This is all that remains of the mound, the earth of which was hauled away a few years ago. During the process of demolition the workmen discovered about twenty-five skeletons, but no objects. One hundred fifty feet farther north, and in Mr. Smith's garden, is a conical mound sixty feet in diameter and about six feet high. The base of the mound is slightly elevated toward Grassy Lake, the local name of the old Mississippi channel. There was no stratification to be observed, and no definite periods of occupancy. In this mound were three badly decayed skeletons, all on the base line, and two of them a little west of the center. The heads of all of these were toward the south. Near the head of skeleton No. 108 was a peculiar pottery vessel, somewhat basin-shaped. The natives had purposely made it very thick, the diameter from the interior to the exterior exceeding an inch in places. At the time it was excavated, it was green in color, and yet showed no contact with copper. The form suggests a crucible of some sort. We have never observed a pottery vessel of similar character. Directly beneath the crucible was considerable charcoal and ashes. There were also fragments of a large pot.

The two skeletons to the west of No. 108 lay under a hard pan of burnt clay. Near them was some broken pottery which did not appear to be fragments of an entire vessel. Near the hand of No. 110 was a spearhead five inches long, and two small projectile points.

The fourth mound examined by us lay four hundred feet due north of Mr. Smith's garden. Its dimensions were sixty by

fifty-five feet in extent, and three and one-half to four feet high. There is one decayed skeleton near the center, No. 111, but nothing with it.

*Mound No. 5.*—This was four hundred feet due north of No. 4 on land owned by Mr. Henry Smith. Local people persist in the statement that this mound was originally nine or ten feet in height, but due to cultivation has been reduced to eighty feet in diameter and five or six feet in elevation. Three skeletons were discovered, all of them so decayed that only a trace of the bones remains. They were numbered 112, 113, and 114. They lay on the base line not far from the center. Near the head of No. 113 was a stone pipe, four inches in length along the base, and two and one-half inches in height. There was some broken pottery, about ten arrowheads, and three or four knives scattered throughout the mound in the earth. There were no animal bones.

A large trench, some forty feet in diameter, was extended through this mound for a distance of nearly sixty feet. The interesting feature noted in the structure was the rather even base line. Extending downward from this were four depressions, or ash pits, at different points. In these there was much charcoal, black earth and quite a number of pottery fragments and a few chipped objects. Each of these pits extended some two feet below the base of the mound but they appeared to be no other than ordinary fire pits, common in many of our mounds.

Contrary to the evidence of Mitchell, we were informed by officials of the Roxanna Oil Company Corporation, which owns extensive tracts just north of the Smith property, that when their oil tanks were constructed they found a number of burials in graves, several pipes, a great deal of broken pottery, bones, etc., indicating that the village of these people lay beyond where we worked. An effigy pipe in the form of an owl and several fine pottery vessels are owned by some of the members of the Corporation.

#### MOUNDS AT LEBANON, ILLINOIS

Dr. J. F. Snyder of Virginia, Illinois, in the Smithsonian Report for 1876, describes some interesting tumuli at this place.

We desired to examine the region and took a large party to Lebanon and worked for several days in mounds owned by Messrs. A. M. Stock and E. J. Schmidt. It is not necessary to





fifty-five feet in extent, and three and one-half to four feet high. There is one decayed skeleton near the center, No. 111, but nothing with it.

*Mound No. 5.*—This was four hundred feet due north of No. 4 on land owned by Mr. Henry Smith. Local people persist in the statement that this mound was originally nine or ten feet in height, but due to cultivation has been reduced to eighty feet in diameter and five or six feet in elevation. Three skeletons were discovered, all of them so decayed that only a trace of the bones remains. They were numbered 112, 113, and 114. They lay on the base line not far from the center. Near the head of No. 113 was a stone pipe, four inches in length along the base, and two and one-half inches in height. There was some broken pottery, about ten arrowheads, and three or four knives scattered throughout the mound in the earth. There were no animal bones.

A large trench, some forty feet in diameter, was extended through this mound for a distance of nearly sixty feet. The interesting feature noted in the structure was the rather even base line. Extending downward from this were four depressions, or ash pits, at different points. In these there was much charcoal, black earth and quite a number of pottery fragments and a few chipped objects. Each of these pits extended some two feet below the base of the mound but they appeared to be no other than ordinary fire pits, common in many of our mounds.

Contrary to the evidence of Mitchell, we were informed by officials of the Roxanna Oil Company Corporation, which owns extensive tracts just north of the Smith property, that when their oil tanks were constructed they found a number of burials in graves, several pipes, a great deal of broken pottery, bones, etc., indicating that the village of these people lay beyond where we worked. An effigy pipe in the form of an owl and several fine pottery vessels are owned by some of the members of the Corporation.

#### MOUNDS AT LEBANON, ILLINOIS

Dr. J. F. Snyder of Virginia, Illinois, in the Smithsonian Report for 1876, describes some interesting tumuli at this place.

We desired to examine the region and took a large party to Lebanon and worked for several days in mounds owned by Messrs. A. M. Stock and E. J. Schmidt. It is not necessary to

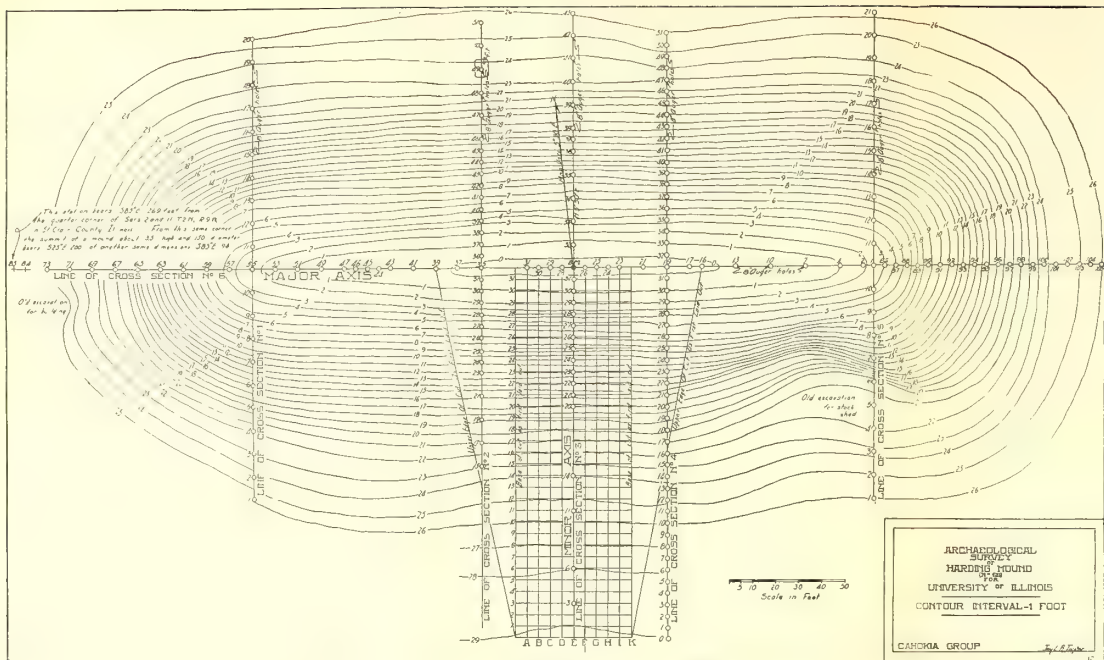


FIGURE 8  
 Cassatt Plan Survey of Mound No. 66. Property of the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad Company.

fifty-five  
high. 7  
but not

*Moun*

4 on lar  
the stat  
in height  
in diam  
were di  
bones r  
lay on t  
No. 113  
and two  
pottery,  
tered th  
bones.

A lar  
through  
interest  
base lin  
sions, o  
charcoa  
and a f  
two feet  
other th

Conti  
officials  
extensiv  
their oil  
in grav  
etc., ind  
we wor  
fine pot  
Corpora

Dr. J. I  
port for

We d  
Lebano:  
Messrs.

go into any detail of our explorations. We found very little in the mounds and came to the conclusion that they were elevations probably on which Indian cabins had been placed. Many interesting objects have been found in the neighborhood.

#### EXAMINATION OF HARDING MOUND, No. 66

It will be seen by preceding pages that we have examined not only numbers of the Cahokia Mounds, but also tumuli and village sites within a radius of twenty-five miles of Monks Mound. However, we made no observations on the Missouri side of the river.

It was thought best to make a rather thorough examination of one of the large structures. The Baltimore & Ohio Railway purchased considerable land lying south of its right-of-way. This included Mounds Nos. 66, 65, and some lesser mounds not on our map. As these were all to be removed by steam shovels in the near future, Mr. Taylor and his men were assigned the task of examining No. 66. The writer consulted with some of the leading archæologists and as this mound is long and narrow, and there is scarcely room on its summit for cabins of any size, we supposed that it must be a mortuary tumulus. The perusal of Mr. Taylor's report will indicate that there were many burials, all of which have disappeared except traces of larger bones and the enamel of the teeth. It is rather unusual that in so large a mound all of these were near the surface. It has been thought best to present complete details of the mound construction and its peculiar character, although we are quite aware that no persons except technical students will find much of interest in these succeeding pages. Mr. Taylor's report here follows.

*Field Notes of Engineer J. L. B. Taylor*  
*April 28 to August 1, 1927*

Because of the surrounding flood waters, it seemed advisable to establish a bench mark, or datum point, somewhere on the mound rather than elsewhere, and an examination of the mound by the crew, all of whom have worked on surveys with me in the Ozark Mountains for the past several years and who are experienced in such matters, showed that the point shown as Stn. 27, or B M, on my map captioned "Contours," was the

highest point on the mound. This was accordingly selected as datum point for all of our elevations, and it should be borne in mind that such readings have been computed downward from B M rather than upward from a point or points at the base line of the mound. It is also well to call attention at this point to the scale of measurements used in compiling all maps submitted: Horizontal measurements are laid off on a scale of ten feet to the inch; vertical measurements, two feet to the inch. This gives the maps a distortion of five to one, and may be misleading to persons not familiar with cross section or profile maps. However, it is a practical method of graphic illustration and is always used in some such relation on maps of this kind.

Setting up the transit over B M, and working away from this point in various directions, we were surprised to find that instead of being an irregular mass of earth thrown together without regard for symmetry, No. 66 seemed to have been very carefully built up, a conviction that grew on us as the work of laying out axes and other lines progressed.

For example: The flagman, Mosier, set a temporary station at either end of the summit where he judged the end slopes proper really began. Careful measurement of the distance from B M to the temporary station at the east end of the crest showed this to be one hundred thirty feet, and from B M to the one at the west end, one hundred forty feet. Having clamped the transit with the telescope trained on the temporary station at the east end of the mound, the telescope was reversed and then showed the temporary station at the west end in perfect alignment with B M and the temporary station to the east.

Investigating relative elevations, the temporary station to the east was found to be two and four-tenths feet below B M, and the one to the west two and three-tenths feet below, a difference in elevation of one-tenth foot in a horizontal distance of two hundred seventy feet.

B M, then, as established, is five feet east of what might be designated as the exact center of the summit, but since a substantial post had already been planted, and since there was little if any difference in elevation between one point and the other, no change was made. Permanent Stn. 1 was established at the former temporary station at the east end, and the temporary station to the west became permanent Stn. 55. The distance between these two points was staked at five-foot intervals and this line, established as the major axis of the mound, was

produced through them to what was considered safe points to use as base, or to Stn. 85, west, and Stn. 105, east, making a total major axial distance of five hundred twenty feet. It is

the de-  
n for  
ound  
onger  
f No.  
west  
east  
below

h the  
also  
ench,  
f the  
; had  
con-  
to be  
mity  
3 M,  
orth-  
et to  
; ex-  
h of  
feet  
feet  
. 28,  
7/3,  
and  
low,  
res-  
egu-  
ight  
the  
and  
ely,  
re-  
this  
for  
was

uncovered at the south end of the line through Stn. 1, and

highest point on the mound. This was accordingly selected as datum point for all of our elevations, and it should be borne in mind that such readings have been computed downward from B M rather than upward from a point or points at the base line of the mound. It is also well to call attention at this point to the scale of measurements used in compiling all maps submitted: Horizontal measurements are laid off on a scale of ten feet to the inch; vertical measurements, two feet to the inch. This gives the maps a distortion of five to one, and may be misleading to persons not familiar with cross section or profile maps. However, it is a practical method of graphic illustration and is always used in some such relation on maps of this kind.

Setting up the transit over B M, and working away from this point in various directions, we were surprised to find that instead of being an irregular mass of earth thrown together without regard for symmetry, No. 66 seemed to have been very carefully built up, a conviction that grew on us as the work of laying out axes and other lines progressed.

For example: The flagman, Mosier, set a temporary station at either end of the summit where he judged the end slopes proper really began. Careful measurement of the distance from B M to the temporary station at the east end of the crest showed this to be one hundred thirty feet, and from B M to the one at the west end, one hundred forty feet. Having clamped the transit with the telescope trained on the temporary station at the east end of the mound, the telescope was reversed and then showed the temporary station at the west end in perfect alignment with B M and the temporary station to the east.

Investigating relative elevations, the temporary station to the east was found to be two and four-tenths feet below B M, and the one to the west two and three-tenths feet below, a difference in elevation of one-tenth foot in a horizontal distance of two hundred seventy feet.

B M, then, as established, is five feet east of what might be designated as the exact center of the summit, but since a substantial post had already been planted, and since there was little if any difference in elevation between one point and the other, no change was made. Permanent Stn. 1 was established at the former temporary station at the east end, and the temporary station to the west became permanent Stn. 55. The distance between these two points was staked at five-foot intervals and this line, established as the major axis of the mound, was





highest point on the mound. This was accordingly selected as datum point for all of our elevations, and it should be borne in mind that such readings have been computed downward from B M rather than upward from a point or points at the base

line of the  
to the sea  
mitted: H  
feet to the  
This gives  
leading to  
maps. Ho  
and is alw

Setting  
point in v  
stead of l  
without re  
carefully l  
laying out

For exa  
at either  
proper rea  
B M to the  
this to be  
the west  
transit wi  
the east er  
showed th  
ment with

Investig  
the east w  
and the or  
ference in  
of two hu

B M, th  
designated  
stantial pe  
little if ar  
other, no  
at the for  
porary sta  
tance betw  
and this li

produced through them to what was considered safe points to use as base, or to Stn. 85, west, and Stn. 105, east, making a total major axial distance of five hundred twenty feet. It is apparent, however, that fifteen or twenty feet should be deducted from the west end of this where modern excavation for a building site has disturbed the original contour of the mound so that exact relocation of the original base line is no longer possible. In these circumstances the major axial length of No. 66 may be fixed at five hundred feet, with a drop at the west end, Stn. 81, of approximately twenty-nine feet, and at the east end, Stn. 105, of twenty-six and fifteen-hundredths feet below B M.

Adopting B M as the center of the mound, through which the original plan was to cut a fifty-foot trench to base, B M also marked the north end of the center line of the proposed trench, which center line, in turn, became the southern portion of the minor axis of No. 66. In establishing this axis, trouble was had again in relocating the original base line on the slight but continued slope of the flood plain southward, and in order to be sure that the trench should begin at base the southern extremity of this axis was fixed at one hundred sixty feet south of B M, or at Stn. 0, elevation  $-29.3$  feet. Turning on B M, the northern portion of this axis was projected one hundred ten feet to Stn. 27/11, elevation  $-26$  feet. Here we found a striking example of uniformity of outline: Stn. 27/1, ten feet north of B M, is nine-tenths of a foot below B M, while Stn. 30, ten feet south, is seven-tenths of a foot below; Stn. 27/2, twenty feet north, is three and four-tenths feet below B M, and Stn. 28, twenty feet south, three and six-tenths feet below; Stn. 27/3, thirty feet north, is six and four-tenths feet below B M and Stn. 26, thirty feet south, is six and seven-tenths feet below, uniformity of construction that might well be credited to present day engineers using modern equipment. Even greater regularity of construction marks the lines of levels run at right angles to the major axis through its Stns. 19 and 35. On the other hand, level lines laid off transversely through Stns. 1 and 55 of this axis, or at the east and west extremities, respectively, of the summit, show a decided variation in elevations at corresponding horizontal distances from the axis, but probably this may be accounted for by comparatively recent excavations for building sites. An old barn foundation, eighty feet long, was uncovered at the south end of the line through Stn. 1, and

quantities of glass, wire, old irons, and harness buckles, were found.

Further evidence of uniformity of construction appears when the following data concerning elevations at the ends of the two axes and the north-south lines through the extremities of the summit are considered:

West end, major axis, Stn. 85.....	29.3'	below	B M
East end, " " , " 105.....	26.15'	"	"
South end, minor " , " 0.....	29.3'	"	"
North end, " " , " 27/11.....	26.0'	"	"
South end, line through Stn. 55, Stn. 55/20.....	25.9'	"	"
North end, " " " 55, " 55/10.....	26.2'	"	"
South end, " " " 1, " 1/21.....	26.1'	"	"
North end, " " " 1, " 1/11.....	26.2'	"	"

Allowance must be made here for the fact that the west end of the major axis, elevation -29.3 feet, and the south end of the minor axis, elevation -29.3 feet, as these were laid out were purposely prolonged, and that the corresponding elevations given here cover points well beyond the foot of the mound proper. Incidentally attention is called to the fact that taking Stns. 68 and 98, major axis, as foci, the mound's peripheral outline is almost a perfect ellipse. Such a plan might have been carefully worked out before the mound was erected, but it would seem that in such deliberations as these the builders would have chosen more prominent or important points as foci.

Continued cloudy weather prohibited observations of Polaris, so a magnetic declination of 5° 30' E., previously ascertained and used by the county engineer in his surveys in this locality, was also used in our survey of No. 66, and the major axis was found to run S. 84° 30' E. (Stn. 85, major axis, bears S. 85° E., two hundred sixty-nine feet from the quarter-corner of Secs. 2 and 11, T. 2 N., R. 9 W., St. Clair County, Illinois).

The basal area of the mound measured about two acres, and its body content approximately forty thousand cubic yards.

*Trench Operations at Base.*—In accordance with your instructions of April 22, plans were made to begin at or somewhat below base at the south side of No. 66 and run a fifty-foot trench northward to a point well beyond the major axis. This work was started on May 2 after the surface of the area to be trenched was staked off in five-foot squares, the center line of the proposed trench coinciding with the minor axis of the mound, but projecting southward beyond it to a point one hundred sixty feet from B M, the common center of the two axes.

The minor axis appeared to be about two hundred twenty feet in length, but close relocation of the southern limit of the mound had been made impossible through farming operations carried well up on the slope, so it was thought best to begin the trench well back from the mound rather than too far within it.

Stakes were lettered A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, and K transversely to the center line to indicate the east lines of trench sections, while successive numbers on center and side line stakes showed the north sides of given sections. By means of a thirty-inch steel probe, the first transverse five-foot section of the proposed trench was thoroughly sounded but appeared to contain no remains. Nevertheless, it was cut away to a depth of three and one-tenth feet, which exposed a very stiff, dark yellow gumbo that appeared to be original flood plain material. This is known locally as "blue" gumbo, but on my field map captioned "Tests on Minor Axis" is designated as "bluish" gumbo. It was adopted as the lower limit for all our work, and throughout the mound proved barren of archaeological material.

The three and one-tenth feet of earth so removed consisted chiefly of heavy black gumbo, the upper eight inches, however, being more in the nature of coarse black loam carrying a noticeable amount of humus originating probably from agricultural operations of the past several years. My field notes show that no remains were found in this section.

By May 4, the crew had reached section 5, and at quitting time that afternoon were well into section 7, having encountered no perceptible change of formation except occasional small masses or pellets of yellow clay or gumbo that gradually became more frequent as trenching progressed northward. A few very small sherds and unworked flakes of flint were found. Auger tests from here backward to Stn. 0 showed the blue gumbo extending downward to thirty-six and four-tenths feet below B M. Beneath this was no less than eight feet of yellow water-bearing sand, so fine in texture that deeper tests would have been impossible without the use of casing.

Continued rains made the gumbo extremely difficult to handle and work progressed very slowly, especially as frequent showers forced the crew to find shelter in the tents, a condition that prevailed day after day until late in June.

On May 6, working between showers, we unearthed a number of very small fragments of pottery three and four-tenths feet below the surface (twenty-six and two-tenths feet) in sec-

tion 10-B. These were not confined in a small area as might have been expected had they all been pieces of the same vessel, but were recovered one at a time from different parts of the section, and all were too small to be of any practical archæological value. The next day, at from three and four-tenths to five and seven-tenths feet below the surface of section 10, we encountered a distinct stratum of small sherds, bits of charcoal and unworked flint spalls. A test hole in section 10-K went through four feet of blue gumbo, seven and one-half feet of water-bearing sand, and about three feet deep into what appeared to be fire clay. Our trench face now measured something more than six feet in height, and a heavy rain that night caused the whole fifty feet to slide in on our working floor, an unexpected interruption that necessitated the removal of several tons of heavy muck before trenching could be resumed. Incidentally, the American Bottoms, in which these mounds are situated, were so completely inundated that numbers of blue racers and rattlesnakes sought refuge on the mound where they finally became so annoying that we postponed work in the trench long enough to mow and burn all the vegetation on such parts of the mound as we were camped on or working over.

A violent storm drove the crew out of the trench at 2 P. M. At 3 P. M. our supply tent and all our provisions and cooking utensils were blown off the mound, and the office tent, in which all our instruments and records were stored, was held in place through a driving rain and wind only by the united efforts of the crew who quit the shelter of their own tents and mounted the south end of the frame. But by five o'clock we had salvaged practically all of our equipment and supplies.

Section 11 was cut down to blue gumbo the next day, May 10, leaving a new trench face seven feet high, the work being materially, though by no means satisfactorily, hastened by a local resident who had been persuaded to bring a slip and a span of mules to keep the loose dirt out of the crew's way.

Section 12 was opened May 11, but except for some pieces of sandstone no larger than small marbles and none of them showing evidences of having been worked, we found nothing more than a few scattered bits of flint, charcoal, and pottery.

Section 12 was cleaned out and section 13 opened on May 12, but the ground was so wet that trenching operations were temporarily suspended, with a trench face seven and four-tenths feet high. A test hole four hundred feet south of the mound

showed blue gumbo appearing at a depth of one foot below its level at the center line of the trench. Levels run across ground west and southwest of No. 66 showed one mound three and one-half feet high and one hundred fifty feet in diameter, the approximate apex of which lies S. 25° E., two hundred feet from the quarter-corner of Secs. 2 and 11, T. 2 N., R. 9 W., St. Clair County, Illinois. Another, of the same dimensions bears S. 85° E., ninety-four feet from the same corner. Sounding these with thirty-inch steel probes failed to indicate the presence of any remains within them.

Resuming work in the trench the next morning, we were forced out at 8 A. M. by a rain that lasted an hour and drenched everything in the tents. By quitting time on the afternoon of May 14, however, we were down three feet in section 14, and although the fifteenth was Sunday we took advantage of the cold, windy weather and carried section 14 down to blue gumbo. This left a clean cut trench face of eight and six-tenths feet and afforded the best opportunity we had had to secure definite data on the cross section composition of the trench. At three and four-tenths feet above blue gumbo (-29.0' B M) appeared a scant half-inch stratum of yellowish gray sand that extended entirely across the fifty-foot face, overlaid for the west forty feet with a twelve-inch stratum of sandy black gumbo. In the east edge of the trench, from two feet above blue gumbo (-30.4' B M) a yellow clay stratum gradually ascended to section 14-I, then dipped sharply and finally pinched out at the two-foot level at the center line, whence a stratum of yellow and irregularly shaped clay pellets, ranging in size from that of a walnut to a base ball, extended to the west edge of the trench, grew gradually thicker downward, and merged with a similar formation beginning at the one-foot level in the east edge of the trench. The few sherds and spalls taken from this section all came from below the one-foot level and were mixed in with the clay pellets. This is the face you inspected on May 16.

On May 18, at three feet below the surface (-26.0' B M) in section 15-C, we uncovered a human skull. This was badly decayed, as were also the humeri and femora that accompanied it, and all were so firmly bonded in the gumbo that none could be preserved for measurement. In reality the bones themselves had completely disintegrated and left only their shape and color as a portion of the soil in which they originally lay. Soon after this discovery was made, a bundle of three other skulls likewise

accompanied by the heavier limb bones was found in the same section. In this case, however, a red sienitic granite discoidal, three inches in diameter and one inch thick, almost as perfectly fashioned as if it had been turned out on a lathe, lay at the point of the lower jaw of one skull. This, and a flint scraper, constituted the sole artifacts recovered from No. 66, and though the first assumption was that it had been buried with the skull, there seems to be reasonable ground now to doubt this. On the contrary, the total absence of other material with the comparatively large number of similar burials subsequently discovered might lead to the conclusion that this discoidal had accidentally found its way to where it was uncovered.

Careful examination of the surrounding soil immediately after these burials were discovered and before the rain softened it failed to disclose any visible evidence that it had ever been disturbed. So far as could be ascertained, the earth in which these bones lay did not in any wise differ in color, texture, or formation from that in the immediate vicinity, and if a trench or individual pits had been dug to receive the burials, all evidence of such outlines had been obliterated.

The next day, May 19, an almost continuous bed of human skulls, humeri, ulnæ, radii, femora, tibiæ, and fibulæ was cut into, but no other bones appeared. These lay at from three to four feet below the surface of the west half of the trench. Burials appeared to have been deposited in bundles of from two to six skulls with their corresponding limb bones, and teeth were so irregularly mingled with the mass that except for an occasional somewhat better preserved skull or bundle of skulls, identification of individual burials was impossible. However, not less than fifteen, and probably twenty or more individuals were unearthed.

By noon, May 20, we estimated our burials at fifty, all of which had been found in the usual bundle-like groups. The first and only piece of flint that showed unquestionable signs of having been fashioned by the hand of man, a very crudely-made scraper, was found in section 16-D that morning, but not close to any human remains. What might have been a sort of altar appeared at a depth of one foot below the surface in section 16-B. This was a circular, disc-like formation of orange-yellow earth, of somewhat denser texture than the surrounding soil, and was one foot thick and five feet in diameter. Close inspection did not reveal the presence of ashes, charcoal, flints, sherds



or other similar material in it, and no bones or other remains were found above or beneath it. There was no visible evidence that it had been burned. Approximately fifteen more burials were unearthed that afternoon, and three fragmentary and badly crushed crania from sections 16-A and 16-D were carried to the office tent in their original gumbo blocks to be preserved for shipment. But at best, these crania, or so much of them as were recognizable as having once been such, were little more than shapeless masses of gumbo, and although they were shipped to the museum at Urbana they could have had little if any archæological value.

The only skull complete enough to show the eye sockets came from section 16-A. This faced N. 40° W., and was tilted slightly to the right. The occipital, temporals, malars, both maxillaries and lachrymals, and the right parietal were missing, the nasals were badly decayed, the frontal was crushed almost flat, and the left parietal was broken. No teeth were found.

Femora and other limb bones accompanying skulls usually lay parallel with the minor axis of the mound, although a few bundles were found lying almost at right angles to this.

Sunday, May 22, a heavy rain began falling at 2 A. M. and continued throughout most of the day, so saturating the mound ahead of the trench face that practically the entire face slid into the trench. This made more extra work, but the next day we cut out section 16. Here we found the blue gumbo floor eight inches deeper than at the north edge of section 14, which was our first intimation that this formation had other than a plane surface. An immediate examination was made to see whether we had overlooked an abrupt break or trench face cut into this material. Nothing of the sort appeared, however, and we found the work thus far had been carried over a comparatively level stretch of this formation, a physical feature which subsequent soundings showed to be unusual rather than typical.

The stratum of sand that showed in section 14 no longer appeared, but four distinct strata of clay pellets, dipping westward, had become dominant features of the trench face. No remains were found below four feet under the surface or under the burials.

Burials still appeared in the west half of the trench, though in less distinct bundles, but nothing appeared in the east half. A steady downpour of rain throughout the whole of that afternoon put six feet of water in the trench, and sometime during

the night of May 24 the entire face, more than fourteen feet high, slid off. An attempt was made to remove the resultant muck, but neither men nor teams could work in it, so further trenching operations there were abandoned, and plans were made to open the trench at the summit of the mound.

As nearly as could be estimated, the remains of at least one hundred fifty burials had been found, but none of this material except the crowns of about two hundred teeth was fit for shipment, and these were mailed to Dr. Henry W. Gillett at New York. A narrow trench and several auger holes, sunk immediately to the west of the burial area later, did not disclose any further remains.

*Trench Operations at the Summit.*—According to the original plans, a fifty-foot trench, starting at base, was to be cut through No. 66 along the minor axis, and allowing for a 1-1 slope of the side walls, which would have made these quite safe, even though the natural angle of repose would have been much steeper, and for a trench depth of thirty feet, the opening through the summit would have extended fifty-five feet on either side of the center line. But preliminary operations in opening such a cut would have called for removal of the office tent which, although all four tents had been crowded against each other, was nevertheless close against Stn. 16, major axis. Consequently, having been forced to change some of the original plans, further changes now seemed justifiable, so it was decided to shift the original location of the trench some fifteen or twenty feet to the west. Hence, what was to have been the final west edge of the cut through the summit was started at Stn. 43, major axis, instead of at Stn. 39, and a vertical section was taken down at Stn. 34<sup>+</sup> instead of at Stn. 32, the plan being to keep a vertical face near the original trench limit proper and to break this down with squib shots for quicker removal.

About 3 P. M., May 27, the slip team uncovered the knees of a human skeleton at a depth of three feet immediately under Stn. 35, major axis, and was then moved to the opposite edge of the cut in order not to interfere with the work of laying this skeleton bare by means of trowels. When the bones had all been cleaned off, they were given a coat of wet Spanish whiting to bring them into relief, were then photographed, and left in place.

Dr. Judd of the Smithsonian Institution and Dr. Terry of Washington University were present when this skeleton and

another one were found. As there were traces of wooden coffins and numbers of nails and metal buttons and buckles found with these, we concluded that the burials were, probably, those of Frenchmen or early settlers.

They were reburied west of the mound, each accompanied by a bottle containing a note from myself telling where and under what circumstances they had been found.

June 1 brought another flood, and by 3 P. M. the waters covering the American Bottoms around No. 66 had risen three inches. On June 2, rain forced us off the job at 3:15 P. M. and kept falling steadily till 9 A. M. the next day. But we worked until six o'clock that afternoon and when we quit, had a six-foot trench face. The upper nine inches of this was loam, the next nine inches was buckshot gumbo, and the lower four and one-half feet was a stiff yellow clay or gumbo carrying numerous pockets of less than a cubic foot of yellow sand. No remains were found. Another heavy rain, beginning at eleven o'clock that night and continuing until daylight the next morning, left the mound so muddy and slippery that neither the men nor teams could work on it. Examination of the trench face on June 6 showed the dirt still too mucky to be handled with shovels. Powder was used without effect, so we returned to the west cut in the summit, where by quitting time that afternoon we had a nine-foot face. Concentric strata of black gumbo, yellow clay, and sand seemed to indicate that the mound had been brought up to this point in its present form rather than built up with a flat top and gradually drawn in.

On June 8 our face was ten and four-tenths feet, and such a variety of material showed in this and was so irregular in composition that a photograph of the cross section seemed to be the best means of recording it. Accordingly, a heavy mixture of lime and water was used to bring out contrasts, after which photographic exposures were made at a distance of fourteen feet and at intervals of ten feet in a line parallel with the face of the cut, the intention being of course to match and mount the resultant pictures as one. In a general way this was a weirdly duplicated background. But as the sun and wind dried out the face of the cut, textures and formations seemed to change, and specific designations shown in the picture no longer seemed applicable. Consequently, so far as geological classifi-

cation is concerned, this built-up picture should not be too seriously considered.

On June 9, we had a fourteen-foot face, measured downward from Stn. 34, major axis, with a base one hundred feet long. Slight traces of charcoal appeared at the bottom of this face, under the axis, and one very small unworked flint spall, and a fragment of sandstone no larger than a pea, were taken out during the day. The central portion of the mound showed black and gray sand in gumbo, the two being plainly separate, and each shot through with yellow gumbo pellets. At thirteen feet below the summit, a broken two-inch stratum of multi-colored buckshot gumbo seemed at first glance to be a deposit of disintegrated pottery, but closer examination showed that coloration (orange, red, yellow, blue, purple, and vermillion) appeared only on the fracture planes, that the material bore no traces whatever of pulverized shell or other stiffening matter for earthenware, and that not the slightest bit of pottery was present. It was assumed, therefore, that coloring probably originated from chemical action on the original vegetable or mineral content of the soil.

Weather conditions had improved slightly and although nothing of value had yet been found in the cut, the work was progressing satisfactorily.

Further use of teams and slides on Harding Mound No. 66 was impossible due to an unusual circumstance. A land owner, knowing that but two teams were available, forbade his neighbor to drive these teams across his land. Therefore, June 9, we ended trenching operations in No. 66 and depended on auger tests.

*Auger Tests.*—Tests on No. 65 were completed by June 20, weather conditions had improved, and tests of No. 66 with augers were begun. Of ten holes bored to water in the trench under Stn. 34+, major axis, one produced two badly disintegrated sherds not more than a quarter of an inch in diameter.

Still trying to take advantage of every hour of good weather, we worked an hour over time that afternoon, but were driven off the job by rain at 5 P. M. Further tests the next day showed water at twenty-three feet at B M as compared with thirty-six and four-tenths feet at Stn. 0, twenty-three and three-tenths feet at Stn. 31, and twenty-three and one-half feet at Stn. 30, all on the minor axis. Barely audible grating sounds at eleven feet under B M seemed to indicate stone there, but no such ma-

terial was recovered. The hole at Stn. 30 was put down to thirty-four and two-tenths feet, but to thirty-three feet produced only a black gumbo muck under which was a blue muck having a decidedly offensive odor and bearing numerous fine roots. At eleven feet under Stn. 26, major axis, the same depth as under B M, a very small fragment of pottery was found, and in connection with whatever was encountered at that depth under B M might indicate a slight stratum of refuse at this level. However, these discoveries were not considered of sufficient importance to justify sinking a pit at these stations.

In test holes bored on June 23, water was found at various levels, none of which was as low as our first work in the trench on the minor axis. The offensive smelling blue muck was in evidence near the base, and was overlaid in most cases by a bluish black soil full of minute white specks which changed in color to a brilliant blue soon after exposure to sun and air. From the twenty-four foot level under Stn. 27 $\frac{1}{4}$  to thirty-two and three-tenths feet under Stn. 29, minor axis, there appeared a six-inch deposit of fine matted roots carrying with them occasional short lengths of what resembled jointed reed stems. These joints averaged one-sixteenth inch in length and fitted into each other telescope-fashion. Repeated examinations of such vegetation failed to show conclusively whether it was living or dead matter.

The first thoroughly dry soil found in No. 66 appeared at the eighteen-foot level under Stn. 26, and at about twenty-one feet under Stn. 25, minor axis. When first encountered, beneath a moist black and yellow gumbo mixture under Stn. 26, this was plainly black gumbo, so dry and hard that the cuttings came out as fine dust that could hardly be held in the augers. At slightly below twenty feet it had changed to about equal parts of black and yellow, then a thin darker stratum appeared, and under this again, just above twenty-four feet, was dry black and yellow. Here a six-inch stratum of distinctly reddish mixture intervened, after which, slightly past twenty-five feet, the dry black and yellow prevailed. The next two feet showed moderately dry black gumbo, then came about two and one-half feet of moist black gumbo, another two feet of black muck, and finally yellow gumbo to the bottom of the hole at about thirty-three feet. Under Stns. 24 and 25 the formation was similar except that the thin dark stratum was missing.

From twenty-nine and eight-tenths feet under Stn. 19, major axis, which, it should be noted, is somewhat below base as this was finally determined, small but well preserved fragments of bone and shell were brought up. Most of the fractures in the former were undoubtedly old, which led to the conclusion that probably they were food remains. The shell was badly shattered, apparently by the auger, and was so light and so fragile in texture that it was assumed to be of fresh water rather than of marine origin. Audible grating and grinding sounds for the next four or six inches under these remains indicated the presence of stone, but no such material could be recovered. Minute fragments of charcoal and pottery and what strongly resembled bone dust were found at nine feet, Stn. 2, major axis.

On June 28, further trenching operations were resumed at the western extremity of the area of bundle burials previously encountered, but no further remains of this nature were discovered.

Returning to Stn. 19, major axis, a test hole was sunk at a point five feet to the north. Water appeared at twenty feet and the test was discontinued at about thirty-two feet with no remains having been found. Another hole was bored five feet west of Stn. 19, and at twelve feet in this the auger struck more hard material, apparently stone, but this could not be recovered. This test was inadvertently overlooked in compiling the cross-section of Mound No. 66 at major axis, Fig. 9. A grating sound was also heard at thirty feet in a hole five feet south of Stn. 19, but nothing could be brought up and the test was stopped at thirty-three feet, or four feet below base. Curiously enough this was a dry hole, even though it was a foot deeper than the one ten feet to the north where water appeared at twenty feet. Another test made ten feet north of Stn. 19 showed fragments of shell (apparently fresh water) at twenty-nine and six-tenths feet. It appears, therefore, that there is at least a slight stratum of camp refuse at or probably below the base of the mound at this point, but a pit at this particular location would require the use of a windlass and cribbing and would be rather an expensive undertaking with extremely problematical results.

Under Stn. 45, major axis, at a depth of nine and eight-tenths feet, we found our first pure, dry, yellow sand in a stratum two inches thick. Under this was a two-inch stratum of black and yellow earth, equal parts, then came a twelve-inch stratum of what appeared to be the same yellow sand.

At Stn. 44, five feet east of Stn. 45, the twelve-inch stratum of sand appeared at eleven feet and a mixture of yellow sand and black gumbo, with the former predominant, appeared at eleven feet under Stn. 44/1, five feet north of Stn. 44. Other tests were made at intervals of five feet around Stn. 45 but no more of this sand was encountered. No remains were found in any of these tests.

What appeared to be the same variety of sand was also found in tests along the minor axis as shown on the map covering these, but in all of these tests such sand was water-bearing.

On July 25, Mr. J. E. Lamar, representing the Illinois State Geological Survey, called in response to our request and took soil samples from test holes along our trench under Stn. 34+ for identification. Results of his investigations reached us too late to be of any use in compiling maps of the cross sections that had already been tested, so our own previously established terminology, which did not appear materially unsuited, was retained.

All told, two hundred thirty-one of the eight-inch test holes were bored in No. 66 to depths ranging from three and two-tenths feet to thirty-three and three-tenths feet, and aggregating a vertical test of 4174 feet applied as follows:

<i>Line of Tests</i>	<i>Number of Tests</i>	<i>Minimum Depth</i>	<i>Maximum Depth</i>	<i>Aggregate Depth</i>	<i>Average Depth</i>
Major axis.....	65	3.2'	33.3'	1410.5'	21.7'
Minor axis.....	25	6.0'	33.0'	522.5'	20.9'
Transversely through Stn.					
1, Major axis.....	22	5.5'	28.4'	345.4'	15.7'
Through 35, Major axis	30	4.5'	19.5'	486.0'	16.2'
"  19, "  "	53	5.6'	29.0'	848.0'	16.0'
"  55, "  "	21	6.6'	27.0'	348.0'	16.6'
Other tests.....	15	6.5'	32.1'	213.0'	14.2'
Totals.....	231	37.9'	202.3'	4174.0'	121.3'
General average.....		5.41'	28.9'	18.1'	17.3'

It might seem that an average of the mean depths, Col. 6 above, should agree with the average depth shown under Col. 5, but this does not apply unless the depth or the number of holes is a constant. The true average depth is therefore eighteen and one-tenth feet.

Allowing an eight-inch test hole a cross-sectional area of 0.35 square feet, it will be seen from this table that a volume of fifty-four and one-tenth cubic yards of No. 66 was actually tested in this manner, every augerful that was taken out having been carefully examined for remains of any kind. But this is only 0.0013525 of the mound's entire content. Wholly disre-

garding the volume examined by trench, the remaining percentage allowed for test by auger is slightly raised but still fails to approach anything like a satisfactory volume exposed for examination.

Personally, I doubt whether a mound can be explored in this manner with even a moderate degree of reliability. However, in this particular case, ideal facilities for checking our auger tests will be afforded when the B. & O. steam shovel goes into the mound. Casual examination of the vicinity where the new yards are to be laid indicates that at least two feet and possibly three feet or more of the base of the mound will be left in place, this amount of filling being required over quite an acreage. This will afford no opportunity, of course, to check the borings to lower levels, and will no doubt permanently bury any remains that are now at or below base, but it is earnestly recommended that the University of Illinois, or other authorities, have a competent observer in attendance while steam shovel operations are being carried on.

Such an observer would be able not only to recognize and save any remains that are thrown out, but could check the actual cuttings against the cross section maps I have prepared. By this means he could report definitely as to the reliability or unreliability of such tests and thereby supply valuable data upon which to base similar future explorations.

*Note by W. K. M.*—While I agree with Mr. Taylor's observations on percentage of mound tested, it is no more than right to state that the auger tests are for the purpose of determining strata, burials, and general character of a mound. They have been extensively employed elsewhere and mortuary structures differentiated from domiciliary mounds by their use. A sufficient number of holes were put down to the base to have brought to our attention burials had there been any considerable number in the mound. Furthermore, when the Baltimore & Ohio Railway Company removes the mound, it will be interesting to know whether skeletons are to be found in the spaces not penetrated by our augers. Theoretically, it is my opinion that none, or very few, will be discovered.

There is a complete series of thirty-five or more maps of Mounds Nos. 65, 66, and other mounds, on file in the Museum of Natural History of the University of Illinois. Particular attention is called to the great detail set forth in Mr. Taylor's excellent maps of Mound No. 66.



## MOUND No. 65

My field notes for June 13 show that Stn. 12, major axis of Mound No. 65 bears N.  $84^{\circ} 30' E.$ , 1635 feet from a stone set on the line of Secs. 2 and 11 at a point nine hundred eighty-seven and four-tenths feet east of the common corner of Secs. 2, 3, 10, and 11, T. 2 N., R. 9 W., in St. Clair County, Illinois, and the tie point is so shown on the map of contours of this mound. In the absence of definite official notes covering the original survey of this locality, I am of the opinion, however, that this stone is on the line of Secs. 2 and 11, nine hundred eighty-seven and four-tenths feet east of the common quarter-corner of these two sections rather than that distance east of the common corner of Secs. 2, 3, 10, and 11. At the time No. 65 was surveyed the immediate vicinity was under water, 1200 feet of this tie line itself having to be measured through water from two to twelve inches deep, and no attempt was made to check up on neighboring corners.

But from Stn. 12, the major axis runs N.  $84^{\circ} 30' E.$ , two hundred thirty feet; the minor axis, through B M, runs N.  $5^{\circ} 30' W.$ , and is two hundred feet long.

The ground plan appears to be almost a circle, but at a point approximately half-way up the slope the outline becomes noticeably rectilinear, and from there to the summit the mound might be described as prismoidal in form or, loosely, as a truncated pyramid of four sides or, but for the unequal axial dimensions, as a truncated cone. But farming operations have disturbed the original perimeter, a drainage canal bank has been thrown up against the southeast slope, and the contents of at least two rather extensive pits, presumably test holes sunk within the last few years, have doubtless altered the original outlines of the summit, so that at this time the mound may for all practical purposes be considered the frustum of a cone.

Here again, surrounding flood waters forced us to establish a datum point or bench mark at the summit, hence all elevations referred to are computed downward from the highest point on the summit. In connection with this subject it is interesting to note the regularity of outline of the upper portions of the mound. For example: Stn. 2, major axis, twenty feet west of B M, and Stn. 16, twenty feet east of B M, are each one and one-tenth feet below B M; Stn. 3, thirty feet west, has an elevation of  $-2.5$  feet, while that of Stn. 17, thirty feet east, is two and seven-tenths feet; Stn. 4, forty feet west is four and one-

half feet lower than B M, and Stn. 18, forty feet east, is four and six-tenths feet lower; Stn. 5, fifty feet west, drops to six and nine-tenths feet, and Stn. 19, fifty feet east, to seven feet; and Stn. 12, on the western extremity of the major axis, one hundred twenty feet west of B M, stands at nineteen and nine-tenths feet, while Stn. 25, the eastern extremity of this axis, one hundred ten feet east of B M, has an elevation of  $-20.6$  feet. Corresponding elevations on other lines surveyed as shown on the map of contours follow practically the same degree of regularity, and base was established at  $-20$  feet.

A test hole at B M showed water at twenty-five and eight-tenths feet which is at the same level as the surface of the water in the drainage canal to the south of the mound. In this respect there appears a marked difference between this mound and No. 66, for in the latter water was struck at various depths (usually above base along the central portions or at points removed from the perimeter) while here it always occurred at twenty-five and eight-tenths feet and always in yellow sand. This sand was entered at from twenty-three to twenty-five feet and although it did not appear to be of uniform depth was found in every one of the forty-four test holes put down. It was found to be deepest under Stn. 28, minor axis, but some disturbance may have resulted here from construction of the nearby drainage canal. Above this stratum of sand was found a deposit of stiff multicolored gumbo or clay in which red and yellow and their various shades predominated, and which for want of a better name, has been indicated on the cross section maps of this mound under its local name of "shale." This stratum reached a maximum thickness of two feet under the central portions of the mound, but pinched out and disappeared altogether within from ten to twenty or twenty-five feet of the mound's perimeter. This might lead to some speculation as to whether No. 65 was built on a low natural mound, speculation that is rather encouraged by examination of stratum immediately above the shale. This is a deposit of gray sandy gumbo, averaging less than twelve inches in depth, and always decreasing in every direction toward the perimeter of the mound. At a point within three feet from the east end of the major axis it disappears completely, only to reappear in increased depth two feet higher and twenty feet further east whence it sloped eastward under something more than a foot of pure gray sand.

Extending the entire length of the major axis and across at least the south half of the mound's base, we found a sharply marked deposit of black gumbo, so dry and hard along the minor axis, where we sunk a line of test holes, that it was difficult to cut and so loose after being cut that it could hardly be kept in the augers for removal. At twenty feet under Stn. 7, minor axis, the augers went through a foot of hard dry sand, an entirely new formation to us but which was encountered later at eighteen feet under Stn. 6, where it was nearly four feet deep, and at about twenty and six-tenths feet under Stn. 18, also minor axis, where it was about two feet deep. In every case, this sand appeared under extremely dry and very hard black gumbo. It seems reasonable to attach some significance to the existence of these sand deposits, but since they lie at or below base and since preparation of the vicinity of the mound for yards by the B. & O. will probably not require removal of the sand it can be examined only by means of pits sunk before the steam shovel is brought in.

The central portions of No. 65 appeared to be a mixed mass of black and yellow gumbo of about equal parts, and the whole was capped with a layer of black gumbo ranging from about one and one-half feet in thickness on the south slope to a maximum thickness of nearly six feet under B M.

No remains of any kind were found within the mound, but twenty feet beyond Stn. D, in the field southwest of the mound, one very small sherd was taken from a depth of three and two-tenths feet below the surface.

#### MOUND No. 64

This appears to have been originally a long, narrow, and comparatively low mound, the major axis running N. 87° W., and from the highest point on which, taken as B M, base appears at eleven and three-tenths feet. Northward from B M, the minor axis extends sixty feet; southward, the center line of the B. & O. track lies at thirty feet, and the cutting operations necessary to laying this have seriously marred the entire south half of the mound. No tests were made.

From Stn. 24, major axis, B M of Mound No. 65 bears S. 9° E., nine hundred ninety-four feet; a small low mound bears N. 35° E., about five hundred feet; another small mound, between

the Pennsylvania and the B. & O. tracks, bears N.  $78^{\circ}$  E. about three hundred feet, and what may have once been a small mound lies south of Stn. D, beyond the B. & O. track.

Casual observation shows the summits of Mounds Nos. 64 and 65 in a nearly direct line with the eastern shoulder of Monks Mound, which is as the Patrick map of 1880 shows them.

#### THE POWELL MOUND

A survey of this mound (which I have not been able to identify positively by number on the Patrick map) shows a major axis three hundred ten feet long and running S.  $89^{\circ}$  E., a minor axis of approximately one hundred seventy feet, and a height of forty feet. (See Plate XXXIX.)

From the southwest corner of Sec. 34, T. 3 N., R. 9 W., Madison County, Illinois, Stn. 15, minor axis, bears N.  $79^{\circ} 30'$  E., three hundred four feet, thence North  $25^{\circ}$  E., six hundred seventy-five feet.

Several smaller mounds lie near by and the surfaces of these, as well as of the Powell Mound, yield considerable quantities of sherds and flint spalls.

In my opinion, the Powell Mound is the most imposing member of the Cahokia group, Monks Mound being so large and so heavily timbered as to pass for a natural feature of the landscape, and No. 66 being too low and long and too obscure in location to attract special attention.

Mr. Powell, on whose property the mound is located, informs me that he will give all archæological material found in the mound to any individual or institution that will completely level it and transfer it to the low overflow land to the west of it. At first thought, this might appear as a very liberal offer, but loses much of its attraction when the apparent barrenness of No. 66 is considered. Moreover, the mound is so regular in outline and stands out so clearly as an artificial structure that it should by all means be preserved.

#### THE TWO LOW MOUNDS WEST OF NO. 66

By written permission dated July 26, 1927, from Mr. H. Mewes, lessee of the B. & O. property on which these mounds are located, a single north-south trench was cut through both and

across the narrow neck of low land lying between them. This trench was approximately four feet wide, and was sunk to the yellowish water-bearing gumbo below the mounds, with a maximum depth of five and one-half feet at the apices of the mounds and slightly more than two feet through the strip of ground between them. Midway between them, however, the trench was put down to a depth of four feet in order to examine any changes in formation that might appear, but the yellowish gumbo persisted and water prohibited deeper work.

The upper twelve inches of both mounds was a loose, dark, and very sandy loam in which, on the north mound, three very small fragments of pottery were found. Under this, heavy black gumbo prevailed, changing in color as greater depths were reached and blending gradually into the yellowish and extremely wet formation already mentioned. No evidences of stratification or disturbed earth were found.

Two small sherds and half a dozen unworked flint spalls were picked up on the northeast slope of the south mound, but no remains whatever were found in the trench. Prior to trenching, both mounds were thoroughly sounded with thirty-inch steel probes.

From previous experience, Mr. H. M. Braun, of East St. Louis, who has spent much time exploring the Cahokia Mounds, expressed the opinion that these two mounds were much more likely repositories for archaeological material than No. 66, and in support of such a theory cited several instances in his own and others' investigations when such attendant mounds had actually yielded greater returns than had ever been found in the adjacent dominant structures. It may be possible, however, to attribute this fact to the greater ease and cheapness with which the smaller structures may be explored as compared with the larger ones. Further examination might bear out his belief in this case, but these two mounds will be completely buried under the new B. & O. yards, after which they will no doubt be closed to further archaeological examination.

## ORIENTATION OF THE CAHOKIA MOUNDS

Observing in reports of previous explorations of the Cahokia Mounds that the major axes of the dominant structures lay in an approximately east-west direction, and inferring from such reports and other information that this feature of construction was now considered intentional rather than accidental on the part of the Mound Builders, it occurred to me to ascertain if possible whether, as in the erection of the Egyptian pyramids, any consideration had been given a pole star when the mounds were built.

The very first observations of No. 66 seemed to encourage such investigations, for there it was found that the major axis, running S.  $84^{\circ} 30'$  E. lay at a right angle to the magnetic meridian when a magnetic declination of  $5^{\circ} 30'$  E., as ascertained by local surveyors, was used. It appeared only reasonable to assume, however, that in all probability the Mound Builders had no conceptions of magnetic variation, but it also seemed just as reasonable to assume that if the Egyptians oriented their structures with reference to the stars, which is, I believe, generally conceded, then the Mound Builders might have followed, or at any rate attempted to follow, a similar plan. Pursuing such a line of reasoning further, it appeared that if backward calculations covering successive so-called pole stars that might have been used by the ancients would lead eventually to identification of a star that might have served as a guide for the Mound Builders (assuming all the time, of course, that they did recognize such a star, and that they did orient their structures accordingly) then fairly definite conclusions as to the age of the mounds might be reached.

But, investigating this problem, the precession of equinoxes demands consideration, for the outstanding visible effect of this is the apparent tendency of some stars to approach the pole while others recede. For example: Although Polaris is now used as our pole star, there was a period when it was not so used, and there will come another period when it will be discarded. At the time the first catalog of the stars was compiled this star lay about twelve degrees from the true pole, but since that time has approached to within approximately a degree and a quarter of the pole. It will yet approach still closer, but in time will recede, so that in about 12,000 years from now Alpha

Lyræ, which is the brightest northern star and which will then lie within five degrees of the pole, will probably succeed Polaris as the pole star. When the pyramids were erected 4,000 years ago, the longitudes of the stars were  $55^{\circ} 45'$  less than they are now, and Thuban (Alpha Draconis) lay within  $3^{\circ} 44' 25''$  of the pole, and, since it was then the most conspicuous star in the immediate vicinity of the pole, no doubt served the Egyptians as their pole star. At any rate, viewed from Gizeh, Egypt, the latitude of which is  $30^{\circ}$  north, the pole star's altitude was likewise  $30^{\circ}$ , and its lower culmination  $26^{\circ} 15' 35''$ . It is interesting to note that the downward slope of the passageways in the nine largest pyramids in the Nile Valley is at a mean angle of  $26^{\circ} 47'$ , which made the pole star of that age, at lower culmination, visible at the extreme foot of such entrances. Possibly the construction of these passages at such an angle was a mere coincidence, but it was followed with such regularity in all the dominant structures that there can be little doubt that it was intentional and worked out only after careful observation of the stars.

But I found no evidence that the Mound Builders had so used this star.

Lying as it does, between Alpha Draconis and Polaris, and being brighter than the one and little dimmer than the other, Beta Ursæ Minoris must have been for a considerable period of time preferable to either of these as a pole star, and an assumption that it might have been so used does not appear unreasonable. Yet, so far as I have been able to learn, no ancient monuments have yet been found that appear to have been oriented by this star.

Likewise it may reasonably be assumed that one other star in Ursæ Minoris, lying nearer the path of the pole than does Beta, might have served as a pole star even though it is of but the fifth magnitude, but here again I do not know of the existence of any prehistoric monuments that might have been oriented by such means.

Beta Ursæ Minoris and Polaris lay the same distance from the pole about 400 A. D., at which time either may have been used as the pole star by civilized peoples, but I can not see that the Mound Builders recognized them in the orientation of their mounds.

Other computations failed to indicate satisfactorily what star might have served the Mound Builders as a pole star or even

whether any star was so used, and the only recourse left was to examine the astronomical history of Polaris as shown below where the azimuth at elongation is given as seen from the latitude of the Cahokia Mounds:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Distance from Pole</i>	<i>Azimuth at Elongation</i>
1000 B. C.....	17°.2	22°.4
500 .....	14°.5	18°.8
0 .....	11°.8	15°.2
500 A. D.....	9°.0	11°.6
1000 .....	6°.2	8°.1
1500 .....	3°.4	4°.4

This table offers little encouragement to any theory of close observation of Polaris, at least, in connection with the construction of No. 66.

Later, when our camp organization and working plans had been better perfected, I felt at liberty to pursue this question further so I turned the work on No. 66 over to a part of the crew and took some of the others to help me survey other prominent mounds, viz., No. 65, 1,700 feet east of 66, No. 64, about nine hundred feet north of No. 65, and the Powell Mound, a mile or so to the northwest of No. 66, the chief end in view being always to find evidence for or against a theory of astronomical predetermination of the mounds' axes.

The major axis of No. 66 was already known to lie S. 84° 30' E. (N. 84° 30' W.) but in the very next mound examined was found to run N. 84° 30' E. (No. 65). The major axis of No. 64 lay N. 87° W., and of the Powell Mound N. 89° W.

Obviously, a small per cent of the entire Cahokia group, which includes probably one hundred fifty mounds, were thus examined, and if all of these one hundred fifty structures were still well enough preserved to leave their axes recognizable, then any conclusions based on examination of the few mounds mentioned above would be subject to severe criticism. But, with the exception of the Kunnemann Mound, which lies northwest of the great Monks Mound, and which I had no opportunity to examine, Nos. 64, 65, and 66 and the Powell Mound, because of their magnitude and the uniformity of their construction, unquestionably rank next to Monks Mound as physically dominant individuals of the Cahokia group. By analogous reasoning, their original construction must have had a significance not attached to minor structures of the group; the direction of their axes, even at this late day, is not a matter of doubt but may be determined with no difficulty whatever so long as such determi-



nation is based on the theory of axial coincidence with maximum elevations in regular lines; few if any of the lesser structures retain sufficient physical evidences to indicate whether in their original form they were markedly elliptical, ovate, or rectangular or to leave the direction of their original axes determinable, the prevailing forms apparently having been either circular, quadrangular, or irregularly pyramidal in plan and probably though not certainly truncated in elevation.

Moreover, careful surveys of the mounds mentioned show the direction of their major axes varying through an arc of  $11^{\circ}$  which, curiously enough, is bisected by a true east-west line predicted on a magnetic declination of  $5^{\circ} 30' E.$ , or exactly one half of that arc. If axial lines were determined by astronomical observation, then this wide variation would seem to indicate that the mounds were built in distinctly different eras, and that the total elapsed time intervening between the erection of the first and the last ones covered a period so great that an extremely wide range of development should mark such remains as are found.

Further investigation may, but probably will not, reveal a significant relation between these variations, and while the Mound Builders doubtless had a fair working knowledge of the equinoxes and the solstices, my own very brief examination of their work at Cahokia disclosed no evidence that led me to believe their monuments were astronomically oriented.

Nevertheless, intensive investigation of the subject, particularly with reference to Monks Mound, would not be amiss, nor would a close survey and platted location with dimensions of each mound in the group be a bad investment from a scientific viewpoint, especially since succeeding years bring certain destruction to the smaller mounds and serious injury to the larger ones.

## THE USE OF COPPER IN THE CAHOKIA REGION

During all our explorations we found no evidence as to the use of copper in ornamentation or for tools on the part of the Cahokia people. It is therefore necessary to republish the article on copper from the Mitchell Mounds written by Dr. Howland many years ago. A copper serpent was found by a boy on the surface not far from Mound No. 76 in the summer of 1922. The serpent effigy was some four or five inches long, composed of thin sheet copper with no filigree work. We were unable to secure this object for the University collection.

Dr. Howland's paper follows:

Prior to the destruction of the St. Louis "Big Mound," in 1870, no articles of copper had been found in the vicinity; in leveling that mound two "spoon-shaped" copper implements were discovered, and in the possession of Dr. J. J. R. Patrick of Belleville, Illinois, is a nugget of native copper, which was found in a large mound at East St. Louis.<sup>1</sup> The mound from which the articles now under consideration were taken was one of that second group of the American Bottom system to which I have alluded. Some twelve miles north of East St. Louis, a sluggish creek or slough with high banks, called Long Lake, joins Cahokia Creek, and on its banks, near the point of junction, stands a group of some thirteen or fourteen mounds, circled around a square temple mound of moderate height. At the western border of this group, and close to Mitchell Station, stood originally three conical mounds of considerable size, which were first cut into some years since in laying the tracks of the Chicago & Alton Railroad. On the twentieth of January, 1876, acting upon a chance intimation in a St. Louis morning paper, I visited this group, and found that the largest of these three mounds was being removed to furnish material for building a road dike across Long Lake, replacing an old bridge. The work was already far advanced, but in its progress some singular discoveries had been made. The mound was originally about twenty-seven feet high, and measured one hundred and twenty feet in diameter at the base, but the various assaults which from time to time had been made upon it for similar purposes had materially altered its proportions, the surface workings having reduced its height some ten feet, although I could not learn that in these early openings anything of especial interest had been discovered.

During the present excavations, however, the workmen found, at a height of four or five feet above the base of the mound, a deposit of human bones from six to eight feet in width, and averaging some eight inches in thickness, which stretched across the mound from east to west as though the remains had been gathered together and buried in a trench.

<sup>1</sup>From Bulletin of the Buffalo Society of Natural Science. *Recent Archaeological Discoveries in the American Bottom* by Henry R. Howland—March 2, 1877.

On this level, scattered about within an area of six to eight feet square, and perhaps twenty feet from the south-easterly side of the mound, were discovered a number of valuable relics, together with a large quantity of matting in which many of them had been enveloped. The archæological zeal of the Celtic mind, was, however, not adequate to the preservation of this matting, and, unfortunately most of it, together with the bones, had been carted off and re-interred in the ditch. I was able to secure several small fragments which show a coarse, vegetable cane-like fibre, simply woven without twisting, the flat strands measuring about one-eighth of an inch in width.

Among the many curious articles carefully wrapped in these mattings and here buried, were found a number of small tortoise shells formed of copper, which being unique, are worthy of special attention. Of these I obtained three specimens, the rest having been scattered.

They are made of beaten copper scarcely more than one sixty-fourth of an inch thickness, the larger and more perfect one measuring two and one-eighth inches in length and thirteen-sixteenths inch in height. Their shape is remarkably true and perfect, showing a central ridge from end to end, produced by pressure from the under surface. A narrow flange or rim, five-twelfths inch in width, is neatly turned at the base, and over the entire outer surface the curious markings peculiar to the tortoise shell are carefully produced by indentation—the entire workmanship evincing a delicate skill, of which we have never before found trace in any discovered remains of the arts of the Mound Builders. Each of these tortoise shells would seem to have originally been covered with several wrappings of a very singular character, and one still adheres to its original envelope, presenting a peculiar mummified appearance. Closely fitting over the outer surface of the copper shell is, first, a woven cloth of vegetable fibre, similar in its general character to the outer matting above described, but of a stronger and better preserved fibre, apparently more like that which forms the woven coating of the Davenport axes.<sup>2</sup> This is covered in turn with a softer, finer fabric, now of a dark brown color, formed of twisted strands, laid or matted closely together, though apparently not woven. The material of which these strands are formed proves, under microscopic examination, to be animal hair. The fact is of singular interest, as it is believed that this is the only instance in which any such fabric has been discovered in connection with relics of the Mound Builders. A careful examination would seem to show the material to be rabbit's hair, in a perfect state of preservation, though none but short hairs are found and most of these are without either tip or base, though occasionally, as shown in the plate, the tips are found, as also the parts towards the base of the hairs, showing several rows of cells.

Overlying this singular fabric and adhering closely to it is a dark colored layer, which under the microscope is shown to consist of a membranous substance with numerous pores and distinct cellular structure (nuclei not visible) and would seem unquestionably to be an animal cuticle, a conclusion which is confirmed by the opinion of the eminent botanist, Sir Josep Hooker, who has examined the specimen. The pores

<sup>2</sup>Prof. Asa Gray, on a hurried examination of this matting, expresses the opinion that it is made of a bark fibre (not bast), possibly from the fibrous bark of *Thuja*.

are apparently gland openings, and the dark line shows a rent in the cuticle.

This layer seems also very carefully and smoothly shaped, and is covered in turn with a final coating of small, dark, iridescent scales which probably owe their color to carbonization, as they show in the spectroscope traces of carbon. They appear on the microscopic examination to be the remains of a layer of non-striated muscular fibre with connecting tissue, possibly from the intestines or bladder of some animal, this having originally served as an outer wrapping for these carefully treasured objects.

Next in point of interest are two specimens (also believed to be unique in their character) of the lower jaw of the deer in both of which the forward part or that containing the teeth is encased in a thin covering of copper, which extends over the teeth, and over this copper sheathing are the same mummy-like wrappings which I have already described, though in one specimen the coarse vegetable fibre cloth is lacking, and the case is primarily formed of the fine, soft, matted fabric of animal hair which in the others forms the second coating. In both, these wrappings are skillfully made to form a close-fitting and symmetrical case. They measure about two and a half inches from the end of the teeth to the point where the bone is cut off, and the copper sheathing reaches to within half an inch of this, while a hole is bored from side to side through the back of each jaw, as though the articles had been worn suspended from the neck for totems or as badges of authority.

Three curious implements which were found were in the shape of two flat circular discs of uniform size, two and three-sixteenths inches in diameter, united by a central shaft, and in general appearance not unlike a narrow spool or thread reel, each having a circular hole through the center three-fourths inch in diameter. These were made of bone and having been polished very smoothly were neatly coated with beaten copper. This is also true of a slender pointed rod of wood eight and three-fourths inches long, which was skillfully covered with a thin copper sheathing extending over its entire length. A number of pieces of very thin wood (of which I secured eight specimens) were also found, which were about three inches long, probably about two and one-fourth inches across at the widest point and very carefully shaped, being rounded at the base and running to a point at the top where they were perforated for convenience in stringing or fastening them together. The striking peculiarity of these thin plates of wood, as of the other objects just mentioned, is that they show evidence of having once been coated with thin copper, many fragments of which still adhere to their surfaces. It is as difficult to conjecture the use of these articles as of a series of five flat copper rods, measuring three and one-eighth inches in length and pointed at one end, placed edge to edge and fastened together with flat bands probably of the same material.

Close at hand were one or two rude weapons of stone. Of one a fragment only was preserved, the other was a double-pointed spear head, a foot long made of light colored chert and precisely similar to those made by the North American Indians. With them was found a bundle of eight copper rods or needles from fourteen to eighteen inches in length, all in one bundle and wrapped together with matting. In addition to these sev-

eral awls, and needles of various sizes made of bone were discovered, and with them a considerable quantity of beads made from the column of Busycon shells; two of those which I obtained measured respectively two and one-eighth and four inches in length, are slightly curved in shape and perforated from end to end. Not less curious is a necklace or circlet of twenty flat crescent-shaped ornaments of shell, each some three inches long and pierced at one end for the cord or thong which fastened them together.

A day or two later, in digging on the northwest side of the mound, the workmen found near its base a mass of bones indicating another trench burial, but the only relics found with these remains were numerous sea shells of the species *Busycon perversum*, which must have been brought from the Gulf of Mexico, concerning which it is worthy of note that the crowns or tops of the shells are missing, having apparently been cut off in each instance at about the same angle, indicating that one part or the other was made to serve some useful purpose in the economy of this strange people. In one very large specimen which I secured the whorl or column of the shell had been cut away and the edges smoothly ground forming a scoop-shaped implement about a foot in length.

## NOTES ON CAHOKIA SKELETONS

By DR. R. J. TERRY, Washington University, St. Louis

Skeleton No. 28. Cemetery in Mounds Nos. 19, 20, 21. Skull, most of the vertebræ and ribs, parts of the sternum, fragments of scapulæ, clavicles, right humerus, parts of both radii and ulnæ, some hand bones, fragments of hip bones, both femora and right tibia, parts of both fibulæ, some bones of the feet. Skeleton was found two feet beneath the surface; extended, head to the east, face upward. A univalve shell was found beneath the chin; five rough flints around the neck; a piece of sandstone marked with two straight grooves on opposite surfaces, a small bone spatula, pieces of ochre, and soft red hematite upon the chest. The bones are fragile, very dry, and porous. The cranium lacks the basioccipital and sphenoid; is symmetrical, broad, and high. Marked occipital taurus, tendency toward kneeling of vertex; beginning closure of sagittal suture. Teeth much worn; incisors lost; lower molars all shed. Glabella-occipital length 16.8 cm.; greatest breadth 14.2 cm.; height 12.3 cm.; bigonial breadth of mandible 9.8 cm. Clavicles slender, curved, right measures 14.7 cm.; right humerus, maximum length 30.7 cm.; right radius 24.1 cm.; right femur, maximum length 42.6 cm. Shape of shaft prismatic; platymeria marked. Right tibia presents shape of shaft No. 5 (Hrdlicka) length 34.5 cm. (medial malleolus lost); platycnæmy marked; retroversion of head slight.

Skeleton No. 29. Cranium large, broad and high; not well enough preserved to give trustworthy measurements. Marked asymmetry apparently post-mortem; vertex reaches highest point at obelion; sagittal suture closed. Slight keeling of vertex. Occipital taurus prominent. Bigonial breadth 10.8 cm.; teeth much worn; shovel-shaped incisors; left lower canine, three ridged. Right clavicle slender, curved, length 15.8 cm. Humeri perforated; left large, right medium. Left humerus maximum length 32.1 cm. Femora moderately platymeric; shape cylindrical to prismatic. Right bone maximum length 45.8 cm.; tibiæ show pathological enlargement in diameters of shafts; head of left bone roughened, marked retroversion in right and obscure facet at lower anterior margin. All of the bones are very brittle and dry. A male skeleton.

Skeleton No. 1 consists of only a cranial fragment including face and frontal bone, left parietal and temporal. Very dry and fragile. Apparently a high cranium. Slight tendency to keeling. Dental alveoli all present; wisdom teeth not erupted: incisors and canines present lateral ridges.

Skeleton No. 100. Skull only, taken from cemetery at Pittsburg Lake. Well preserved. Glabello-occipital length 17.4 cm.; greatest breadth 13.6 cm.; height 19.4 cm. No tendency to keeling. No occipital taurus. Sagittal suture open; coronal obliterated inferiorly. Chin pointed, bigonial breadth 8.8 cm.; teeth much worn. Evidently the skull of a woman.

The skulls excepting No. 100 have the highest point of the vertex about the obelion with a steep slant to the glabella. This head form is also strikingly marked in an endocranial cast that was obtained by lifting away the fragile bones of the cranium from the hard mass of gumbo which completely filled the cranial cavity. A plaster replica of this earth cast has been made and will be the subject of future study.

## PREVIOUS WORK AND COLLECTIONS RELATING TO THE CAHOKIA GROUP

DR. PATRICK

Dr. A. J. R. Patrick, Belleville, Illinois, was one of the pioneers in Cahokia work. The survey called on his widow, who is now Mrs. John Bauman. She showed us some field notes written by Dr. Patrick, in 1877. On November 18, of that year, he visited Monks Mound, and did some exploring in the vicinity. Again, on April 7, 1878, April 6, 1879, and May 11 and 12, 1879, Dr. Patrick dug in a number of places along Cahokia Creek, and in the low mounds. His observations, for the most part, were confined to burials, within four feet of the surface, since he used a slender, steel rod, by means of which he sounded for bones, pottery, or stone. This method of testing has been employed for many years by collectors, and others, and is possible when soil is free from stone. The rods will not penetrate hard gumbo, but in the late winter, or early spring, the rods penetrate easily to a depth of four feet. One is able to distinguish by feeling with these rods stone from pottery, bone or decayed wood from layers or sections of hard earth. The use of the rod in the Mississippi Valley burial places, (where the soil is favorable) has been so extensive that a large percentage of all burials near the surface have been reached. Most of the large collections of pottery vessels were secured in the manner described.

Dr. Patrick, in the field notes, states that in a small mound east of Monks, he found a floor of clay. In the center there was a depression, or basin. On the slopes of mounds and in one or two low mounds he found some effigy pottery, portraying frog, deer, bear, fish, and duck, but unfortunately, he does not give us the numbers and we cannot identify the mounds he explored. In one of his notes, he does not think the large mounds were used for burial places. He suggests the theory that they were made in order that dwellings might be elevated above the plain. He considered the ponds as artificial. On April 6, 1879, he found a skeleton and pottery, also a skull, which he calls No. 3, accompanied by a copper plate. Mrs. John Bauman says this plate was sent to the Smithsonian Institution. A letter from Dr. Neil M. Judd, Curator of Archæology, informs the writer that he cannot locate the copper specimen in the Smithsonian collections.



Mrs. Bauman has in her possession several field maps, and a profile survey of the group. She says that the first survey was executed November 5, 1876, and that the profile survey was made July 5, 1879, and that Louis Gainer Kahn, a surveyor, either made this survey, or assisted on it. She thinks there were several surveys, more or less thorough, made of the Cahokia Mounds in the period between 1870 and 1888.



FIG. 10—Large polished celt or hatchet in Peabody Museum.  
Half natural size.

## SPECIMENS FROM CAHOKIA

After considerable investigation we were able to trace the location of a number of Cahokia objects. Most of these were found many years ago and the exact circumstances of discovery are not available. The interesting local collection on exhibition in the museum of Monticello Seminary, Godfrey, Illinois, was made by William McAdams probably twenty-five to as far back as forty years ago. Some of the objects in this collection appear to have been in the hands of other owners for some time. The largest private collection of material from Indiana, Illinois, Kentucky, and Missouri is that owned by E. W. Paine of Springfield, Illinois. Mr. Payne has many objects from mounds, graves, and the surface of the Cahokia district and a radius of ten miles about it. His collection is packed away and it is impossible to secure photographs or descriptions.

In the Peabody Museum is a large polished celt, or hatchet. This is shown in Text Fig. 10. This was chipped from very fine, highly colored flint—dark brown and yellow, with a suggestion of pink in the coloring. The specimen was then carefully ground and polished until all depressions made by flaking were removed. Mr. Charles C. Willoughby, Director, called my attention to this specimen. The catalog stated that it was secured from Monks Mound about 1873. This was six years prior to Professor Putnam's visit to the mounds.

Figure 8, Plate XXXII, shows a very large axe, twelve by seventeen inches, weight seventeen pounds. It was found near the Kunnemann Mound. There is a low mound just west of the Kunnemann, No. 12, from which a great number of large unfinished celts have been secured. Mr. Seever obtained a number of these for the Missouri Historical Society collection years ago. The small hematite axe (Fig. 7) was also found near the Kunnemann Mound, on the surface. (Plate XXXVII.)

Plate XXXIII, Figs. 1-5, show five pipes, three of which are effigies. No. 1 is a large frog effigy pipe from a grave on the bluffs east of Cahokia. No. 2 is a human effigy pipe found near Cahokia. No. 5 is a pipe of sandstone, from the region, exact locality not given. No. 3, a clay pipe from a grave near Cahokia. No. 4 is probably a bird effigy, although the workmanship is not very good. Figure 8 is a sandstone effigy pipe, large. Shown one-third size. Found with a burial in the cemetery on the bluffs

between the two sugar loaf mounds, known as Group 3, Madison County, Illinois. William J. Seever collection.

Figures 6, 7, Plate XXXIII, show two stone idols from the Monticello Seminary collection. Number 7 is of fluorspar and about twelve inches high. It was found on the bluffs directly east of Cahokia. Number 6 is of red material, almost pipe-stone, is about eighteen inches high, exceedingly well made and came from a small mound, one of the Cahokia group, on the Caseyville Road, St. Clair County, Illinois. Unfortunately the number of the mound is not given.

Plate XXXIV. Two sea shells and a string of shell beads. The string of shell beads (Fig. 1) and the shell vessel (Fig. 2) were taken from the Mitchell Mound at the time it was destroyed by the Chicago & Alton Railroad in the winter of 1876. The shell (Fig. 3) shown for comparison, was found in a mound in Jersey County. They are shown one-fourth size.

Plate XXXII, Figs. 2-6 show shell spoons and bone awls (Fig. 1) from cemeteries south and west of Cahokia. Collection of William J. Seever. Broken *Unio* shells with scalloped edges have frequently been found by the survey and were identical with those shown in this picture.

Plate XXXIV, Fig. 4. Attention is called to this remarkable art-object. It portrays the height of efficiency in flint-chipping. Found by Mr. Barth, a tenant of the Rameys, south of Monks Mound, in December, 1921, on the surface. Shown full size.

## CAHOKIA POTTERY

Some thousands of pottery fragments, both plain and decorated, have been placed in stacks and on exhibition in the Natural History Museum by Professor Baker. No attempt at either classification or study has been attempted by the writer. Inspection of the fragments shown in plates presented in the rear of this report will indicate the great range in form, design, or motif. Ceramic art at Cahokia was highly developed and there is a wealth of material available for comparative studies with other portions of the Mississippi Valley. Dr. Carl Guthe has established for the National Research Council a pottery repository at the University of Michigan Museum. Dr. Guthe has had considerable experience in ceramic studies in the Southwest, and his volume on art in pottery at Pecos Pueblo is most thorough and scholarly. It has been suggested that he devote time to a general classification of pottery forms and concepts of the central, southern, and eastern United States. Such research will indicate relationships and differences to be obtained in no other way. While many Cahokia forms are common throughout the whole great Mississippi basin, yet one need not be an expert in ceramic art to sense that which might be termed Madisonville, Etowah, Cahokia, Moundville, or St. Francis. There is a persistent Cahokia concept, just as there appears a positive Etowah concept. The field of pottery distribution east of the Pueblo-Cliff country offers abundant and far-reaching possibilities of great interest and importance to archaeological science. These multitudinous designs made by Indian women on clay vessels are imperishable records preserved these many years. A careful and far-reaching study of them may solve some of our migration and origin problems.

## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CAHOKIA GROUP

In this report we expand, or change, the brief conclusions offered in previous bulletins. Subsequent and more thorough explorations will doubtless enable us to solve the Cahokia mystery. Notwithstanding rather extensive research through several seasons, we are unable to go as far as we would like in the matter of definite conclusions.

The surveys of Phillips Academy have spent portions of six winters in researches in certain sections of Georgia, Mississippi, and Tennessee. The Director of the Cahokia explorations served on all these surveys and the knowledge obtained of distinctly Southern cultures presents us with a firm basis of comparison. We, therefore, now state that Cahokia represented the farthest northward push of a strictly Southern culture. It is true that many of the art forms, common to Tennessee, Georgia, Alabama, and elsewhere are not present at Cahokia. At least they have not been discovered the past eight years, yet the mounds themselves, the pottery, and game stones are Southern in character. In brief, Cahokia bears a closer relationship to Tennessee and Georgia mound groups and cultures than to the tumuli of the Illinois valley to the north, and is quite different from those of Ohio.

In March of this year our survey began work again in the Illinois valley and we continued explorations until the end of December. Our observations on the region between Lewistown and Alton will be set forth in a future bulletin.

Frequently during the past few years has arisen the question, "What is the relationship between Cahokia culture and that of the Illinois valley?"

Such query has occurred to many observers and we recall that during the preliminary inspection of Cahokia years ago, Mr. W. J. Seever made a positive statement that we would find in the Illinois valley proper a totally different archæological setting from that apparent at Cahokia. He based his statement on artifacts and utensils, and subsequent explorations have confirmed the view expressed.

Between 1860 and 1900, there was a great deal of indiscriminate digging throughout the Illinois valley. Search through the literature reveals that aside from papers by Dr. J. F. Snyder

(see bibliography) and the observations of both Dr. Howland and Dr. Rau, previously referred to, little of scientific value has been produced. The several books or pamphlets written by state archaeologist, MacAdams, are not helpful in the broad sense, yet they contain a few paragraphs worthy of preservation. Mr. George Langford, Joliet, Illinois, published in *The Anthropologist* for July-September, 1927, a most excellent paper on explorations of Indian sites of that region. Dr. Fay-Cooper Cole and his able assistants have also carried on mound explorations above Joliet and in northern Illinois, the results of which will be published in due time.

Hence, our preliminary conclusions are based on recent explorations, the few published papers, and archæologic material in public and private collections.

Toward the end of 1926, Dr. Don F. Dickson of Lewistown began the excavation of a large cemetery on his father's farm. At present writing there are one hundred eighty skeletons and accompanying objects preserved in the ground as found and enclosed in a museum. A careful study of this exhibit enables us to visualize one of the middle Illinois cultures, one hundred seventy miles northward of Monks Mound.

In answer to our question as to relationships between the interesting region of the Illinois and Cahokia proper, it is necessary to enter into some detail.

As observed, the pottery of Cahokia for the most part is distinctly Southern, whereas the ceramic art between the mouth of the river at Alton and the city of Peoria far to the north, presents certain variations. Some of the types are Southern, as one would naturally expect, whereas other forms seem local and not unlike those of Madisonville cemetery, Ohio. The exact differences and correlations will be worked out by Dr. Guthe, and those in charge of the study and classification of ceramic art of the United States east of the Rocky Mountains.

Aside from differences in the pottery, there is to be observed in the large private collection of Mr. George Waters of Godfrey, Illinois, and museum exhibits of the Missouri Historical Society, the Smithsonian, New York, and other museums, marked differences in the stone artifacts of the Cahokia site and those of the Illinois valley proper. Godfrey, being but twenty-five miles from Cahokia, presents several well known Cahokia forms. The peculiar small arrow points, notched at the base, and shown in Plates XIII and XIV, occur in great

numbers on the American Bottoms near the mounds, but are not found to any considerable extent beyond Alton. Large flint objects, such as spades and hoes, numerous about Cahokia, almost entirely disappear when we reach Peoria. One of the chief differences in the artifacts is observed in beads, which at Cahokia are large, thin, and flat. They are usually disc form, from two-thirds to one and a half inches diameter. The special types referred to are shown in Figs. 7-12 in Plate XXIV. They are manifestly distinct and indicate a local development. Such forms of ornamentation in shell occur elsewhere, but seldom in profusion as at Cahokia. In the mounds along the Illinois River, particularly in the vicinity of Beardstown, Havana, and Lewistown, are great quantities of small shell and bone beads as well as fresh water pearls, which were perforated and strung.

We might be justified, in view of the evidence, in assuming that there are two, and possibly three, cultures in the Illinois valley between Alton and Joliet, which are not closely related to Cahokia. After a cursory inspection of objects found between Joliet and Lake Michigan, one might suggest that intensive study will probably prove the presence of a different tribe (rather than a general culture) in that region. The types discovered by Mr. Langford at Joliet and described in his excellent article (referred to) indicate that his site lies within the borderland between the Illinois proper and the Lake. Let us be a trifle more explicit. Mr. Langford finds a world of material which does not differ essentially from artifacts or utensils, etc., common to all stone-age Indians within two hundred miles south or three hundred miles east of the Joliet region. At present writing it would seem that the term Fort Ancient Culture might well apply. Certainly it is not high, and little stone-age art is in evidence. Copper has been found, yet so far there is not much indication of aboriginal trade.

Something over a year ago commercial diggers in the Havana region discovered two "log tombs" or cribs in which burials were made. These we shall describe later, but it is well to remark here that they indicate a specialized and rather "Hopewell" form of culture. In the same region another band of Indians appears to have buried in mounds, yet they did not employ cists of either logs or stone.

During October-November, 1927, and March-December, 1928, we were unable to find log structures in any of thirty or forty mounds tested. All of which suggests that the normal

form of burial in mounds predominated, and these lob cribs are not characteristic of the entire region, but present departure from established mortuary custom, just as in certain of the lower Scioto tumuli. Readers are requested to compare forms presented in Plates XL to XLIX of this bulletin with Mr. Langford's figures in *The Anthropologist*, July-September, 1927.

Coming back to Cahokia itself, one's most lasting impression, after years of research, is the immensity of the place. Added together, all the earth of all tumuli between Peoria and Alton would not equal in bulk the central Cahokia group. Writers have frequently speculated on the real purpose of this prodigious mound construction. Our excavations were extensive. What significant facts could be deduced from these labors? One is that some of the mounds contain a great deal of refuse material (pottery, animal bones, and arrow heads) distributed through the earth from the surface down to the base line.

Our pits in other mounds of size indicated a surprising scarcity of village debris. To these simple observations should be added the surface inspections and village site trenches. We come to the conclusion that certain sections of the 2,000-acre tract were always favorable cabin or wigwam sites. Others were not. Cabins may have been moved. Obviously, we have no knowledge as to the exact changes which took place, but we may safely conclude that there are, today, two types of mound body or material. Those in which gumbo predominates, such as Nos. 65 and 66, and the loam sandy soil, or stratified tumuli of which Nos. 10-11 and 35 are outstanding examples.

Naturally, in mound construction, Indians would remove earth from convenient or near-by spots. Variegated layers, especially in colors, sometimes found may be composed of soil brought from a distance. Yet the greater bulk of mound contents was carried up by Indians in baskets from the immediate vicinity. Tumuli of gumbo contain a minimum of cabin or camp-fire refuse, whereas the loam mounds contain much. The reason? Wigwams, with some exceptions, were located on sandy or loam soil. There is some village-site material south of the Pennsylvania and Baltimore & Ohio railways. Yet here gumbo predominates and there are indications of no large village site. All field evidence tends to prove that the Cahokians erected their cabins on the more favorable surface. Gumbo is sticky, damp, and disagreeable.



Since the natives scooped up earth from near their houses, we naturally have a preponderance of pottery fragments, bones, and flint chips in all but the gumbo mounds.

Sometimes it is a short distance from such a setting to one more conducive to comfort in living. Indians wore moccasins and the wetness of gumbo soil from November to mid-April is a factor to be taken into account at Cahokia.

The soil around Mrs. Tippetts' Mound (No. 61) is mostly gumbo; the village-site indications are not heavy, but several hundred yards north, where there is less gumbo, the village was thickly populated. It does not seem likely that the Indians would go any distance to secure the earth for the construction of No. 61. It would be more convenient to obtain it from points nearby and the two depressions marked "Lakes" on the map probably represent the places from which earth was taken for Nos. 61 and 62, and probably for other mounds.

Why were so many mounds built of gumbo? It was difficult to handle—even our own men using modern steel shovels find it heavy and wearisome to remove. Possessed of naught but stone and shell hoes, digging sticks, and baskets or skin bags, the removal and transportation of sufficient gumbo to erect Mound No. 66 was a herculean task.

And the purpose of No. 66? It is too narrow on top for large wigwams or temples. The auger tests—nearly two hundred to the base—did not indicate the level or burnt floor common in mortuary tumuli. Beyond No. 66 towards the north is an elevation flanked by two ponds or depressions. Old observers used to call this a causeway leading to other mounds. There being no village-site worthy of the name around No. 66, why the causeway? The burials found by Engineer Taylor a few feet below the surface, down the southern slope were made after the mound had been constructed. There appear to be no burials, altars, or distinct stratigraphy in the body of the mound. It must remain one of the outstanding mysteries of Cahokia and we may be pardoned again for referring finally to the series of complete and detailed maps drawn by Mr. Taylor, which cover every possible fact or circumstance of mound construction of this remarkable tumulus.

The age of Cahokia? We cannot answer this question. We have always believed that it was long before 1660. In distant Quebec, La Salle, Hennepin, and other explorers heard of the

main Illinois village located on the present site of Utica. Now, the surface debris at Utica is far less than that of Cahokia.

Had Cahokia been inhabited, certainly the early French explorers would have visited the site. We find the Cahokia Indians mentioned, but they lived to the southward and we have never been able to positively identify them as builders of the famous group. Peradventure, one might estimate that Cahokia was occupied between the years 1200 to 1500. Why? This is a matter of opinion after seasons of exploration and study. As yet the statement cannot be positively proven.

We have never believed that all these structures were erected within a short space of time, individually or as a group. No. 66 seems to show completion within limited dates, there being no sod-lines.

In all of the larger mound groups, with scarce an exception, there has been found one or more mortuary tumuli in which the ranking personages were interred. Future exploration doubtless will result in such discovery at Cahokia. Then we shall be able to study the art and life of the builders more comprehensively, since in such a structure would be placed objects illustrating all phases of aboriginal life of the Cahokians.

THE CAHOKIA MOUNDS

PART II

THE GEOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF SOME OF THE  
CAHOKIA (ILLINOIS) MOUNDS

BY

MORRIS M. LEIGHTON  
Chief, Illinois Geological Survey



State Geological Survey Division  
March 1, 1923

DR. DAVID KINLEY

*President, University of Illinois*

Dear President Kinley:

The accompanying report on a geological investigation of Cahokia Mounds by Dr. M. M. Leighton, undertaken at your suggestion, is transmitted for your information and for publication if desired.

The interest attaching to the mounds, and particularly the movement to include them in a State Park, made it desirable to supplement the archæological investigations of Dr. W. K. Moorehead with those of a specialist in surficial geology, in order that all possible light might be thrown on the origin of the mounds. While there has been a decided difference of opinion, and casual consideration of the problem would lead a geologist to assume, tentatively, that the mounds are natural remnants of an alluvial terrace which has been mostly removed by erosion, the careful scrutiny of the excavations, supplemented by systematic auger borings and study of the oxidation and leaching of the materials in the mounds and under the surrounding flood plain, makes it clear that the mounds so far investigated are artificial rather than natural. Others which have not been studied may prove to be natural, but I am not justified in expressing an opinion in advance.

The careful observations and deductions by Dr. Leighton supplemented by my own less extensive studies may lead to a conclusion harmonious with that of Dr. Moorehead. I am glad to transmit the results of Dr. Leighton's efforts and to express the hope that the State may acquire and preserve these interesting and significant relics of a settlement and civilization in Illinois far back of anything recorded in the history of man.

Very respectfully yours,

F. W. DEWOLF, *Chief*  
State Geological Survey



## INTRODUCTION

### THE PROBLEM

For many years there has been a difference of opinion as to whether the group of mounds northeast of East St. Louis, on the American Bottom of the Mississippi River, has had a natural mode of origin, or whether they represent the work of Mound Builders. Monks Mound has been pointed out by some as being the largest Indian mound in North America, if not in the world, while others have insisted that it is natural.

In September, 1921, excavations were started in the smaller mounds by Professor Warren K. Moorehead, Archæologist, of Andover, Massachusetts, and continued for two months under the joint auspices of the University of Illinois and the Illinois State Museum Division. The following spring and fall of 1922, the exploratory work was assumed entirely by the University. The excavations afforded an excellent opportunity for a geologic examination of the materials composing the mounds, and in this work the State Geological Survey Division cooperated. The writer was requested to undertake the geological work. Five visits of about two days each were made at advantageous times for inspection, and the data for the following report were collected.

### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The writer wishes to express his sincere thanks to the Ramey family, owners of Monks Mound and other mounds; to Mr. Schmidt, owner of the Schmidt Mound, and to Mr. Kunne-  
mann, owner of the Kunnemann Mound, for the privileges they extended and their hearty spirit of cooperation; to Professor Warren K. Moorehead for his contribution of men for certain manual labor necessary to the study; to Curator Frank C. Baker, of the Museum of Natural History of the University of Illinois, for his identification of fossil shells found in the mounds and the east bluffs; and to Professor W. S. Bayley of the Department of Geology of the University of Illinois, for his identification of certain rock materials. The writer also acknowledges his indebtedness and gratitude to F. W. DeWolf, Chief of the Illinois Geological Survey, who by his discussions and suggestions contributed scientifically to the success of the study.

FORMER OPINIONS OF GEOLOGISTS REGARDING THE  
ORIGIN OF THE MOUNDS

In searching the literature for opinions regarding the origin of the mounds, the writer has been careful to select those of geologists, rather than those of archæologists, inasmuch as the supreme motive of the former is to critically study and properly interpret land forms and the materials of the earth, while the archæologists are interested primarily in the physical, mental, and social characteristics and activities of pre-historic man.

*The Views of G. W. Featherstonhaugh, F.R.S., F.G.S.*—During his travels in 1834 and 1835 from Washington, D. C., to the frontier of Mexico, the English geologist, G. W. Featherstonhaugh, visited the Cahokia Mounds, and gave his account in his book, *Excursions in the Slave States*, Vol. I, 1844, pp. 266-270. Featherstonhaugh evidently did not doubt the human origin of the mounds, for he offered no suggestions to the contrary and definitely states that "the soil of which the mound consists is the rich black mould taken from the surface below. . . ." (p. 268).

*The Views of Professor A. H. Worthen.*—As early as 1866, the natural theory of the origin of the mounds received the support of a no less reputable geologist than Professor A. H. Worthen, Director of the Geological Survey of Illinois. Professor Worthen, in Vol. I of the Geological Survey of Illinois, p. 314, considered the mounds as "proof" that the Mississippi Valley had been filled to a height of fifty or sixty feet above its present level and that this was "in part removed by subsequent erosion during the period of elevation and drainage that succeeded the drift epoch." Artificial exposures in the large mound in the upper part of the city of St. Louis, now destroyed, were examined by him, and these showed about fifteen feet of common chocolate brown drift clay at the base, overlaid by thirty feet or more of "the ash colored marly sands of the loess, the line of separation between the two deposits remaining as distinct and well defined as they usually are in good artificial sections in the railroad cuts through these deposits."

From this he inferred that the "mounds are not artificial elevations . . . but, on the contrary, they are simply outliers of loess and drift, that have remained as originally deposited, while the surrounding contemporaneous strata are swept away by denuding forces."



It seems pertinent to call attention to the fact that the science of Glacial Geology was scarcely beyond its embryonic state at this time, and but little more could be claimed for the sciences of Physiography and Sedimentation.

*The Views of William McAdams.*—William McAdams, a teacher and careful observer of natural science, including geological phenomena, regarded Monks Mound (called by him Cahokia Mound) as of artificial origin. In his pamphlet, "Antiquities of Cahokia, or Monk's Mound in Madison County, Illinois," Edwardsville, Illinois, 1883, pp. 2-3, he says:

Since some doubts have been expressed as to the artificial origin of this structure we were much interested to ascertain what could be learned in this respect by examination. On the top of the pyramid are the remains of a house, said to have been commenced by the monks, but afterwards added to and finished as a comfortable residence for the family of a man named Hill, an enterprising settler who owned the mound and a large body of land adjoining. Beneath this house is a deep unwallled cellar. A section down the side of the cellar to the depth of ten feet very plainly revealed a deposit of various kinds of earth without stratification. The principal part of this deposit was the black humus or mould, so common in the bottom and forming the principal soil, very sticky when wet and breaking into cubical blocks when dry. Here and there, as if thrown promiscuously among the black mould, is a bunch of yellow clay, or sand, or marly loess, these bunches being about such size as a man could easily carry.

Similar sections can be seen up the old road made by Hill to ascend to his residence.

About midway, on the north side, or face of the pyramid, and elevated twenty-five or thirty feet above the base, in a small depression, stands a pine tree, singularly enough, since this tree is not found in the forests in this locality. There was a story rife among the early settlers that this tree stood at the mouth of an opening or gallery into the interior of the mounds. To ascertain the truth of this matter, Mr. Thomas Ramey, the present owner of the mound, commenced a tunnel at this tree and excavated about ninety (90) feet towards the center of the mound. When fifteen feet from the entrance to the tunnel a piece of lead ore was discovered, but no other object of interest was found. The deposits penetrated by the tunnel are very plainly shown to be the same as seen in the cellar mentioned above.

Mr. McAdams republished a paragraph from Edmund Flagg's book on *The Far West*, 1838, p. 167, regarding an old well on the mound. Flagg's description reads:

Upon the western side of Monks Mound, at a distance of several yards from the summit, is a well some eighty or ninety feet in depth; the water of which would be agreeable enough were not the presence of sulfur, in some of its modifications, so palpable. This well penetrates the heart of the mound, yet, from its depth, cannot reach lower than the level of

the surrounding plain. I learned, upon inquiry, that when this well was excavated, several fragments of pottery, of decayed ears of corn, and other articles, were thrown up from a depth of sixty-five feet; proof incontestible of the artificial structure of the mound.

*The Views of Dr. N. M. Fenneman.*—Dr. N. M. Fenneman of the University of Cincinnati believes that the valley was much aggraded in the Wisconsin epoch, but that this filling has not been entirely removed, there being remnants left within the cut-offs of the meanders which were later eroded, dissected, and narrowed “by the meander of the main stream and its tributaries until mounds were produced.<sup>1</sup> Among those,” he continues, “was the great natural hill which was subsequently modified by man and is now the partly artificial Monks Mound.

The partly artificial character of Monks Mound is evident from its form. That it is in part a natural feature, is seen by its structure. Sand is found neatly inter-stratified with loam at an altitude of about four hundred fifty-five feet, or thirty-five feet above its base. To this height, at least, the mound is natural and as there is sufficient other evidence that the valley was filled in the Wisconsin epoch to at least that height, the original mound may be regarded as a remnant of the alluvial formation of that time. Its base was probably narrowed artificially by the removal of material which was carried to the top. In this way also the conspicuous abruptness of its slopes was probably produced. No natural stratification has yet been found more than thirty-five feet above its base and therefore, for aught that is now known, more than half its height may be artificial. There is therefore no reason at present to deny to Monks Mound the distinction claimed for it of being the largest artificial mound of its kind in the world. The time of its building and the people by whom it was built are unknown.

The many other mounds within a mile or two of Monks Mound had the same origin. Several of the larger ones have been similarly altered artificially. The low ones of gentle slope and less definite outline are believed to be in their natural forms.

A later statement<sup>2</sup> reads:

To a height of thirty-five feet above its base the material of Monks Mound shows assortment and stratification, which is evidently natural. Above that height it affords no structural evidence bearing on the question whether it is of natural or artificial origin; but the form plainly indicates the work of man, and not of geologic processes. It is highly probable that the mound in its natural condition was much lower and broader than at present, and was of rounded, almost drumloidal form, similar to the smaller ones of the group which now surround it. By cutting down its margin to the level of the surrounding plain its builders obtained ma-

<sup>1</sup>*Physiography of the St. Louis Area*, Ill. State Geol. Survey Bull. 12, 1909, pp. 62, 63.

<sup>2</sup>*Geology and Mineral Resources of the St. Louis Quadrangle*, U. S. Geological Survey Bull. 438, 1911, p. 12.

terial to raise the mound to perhaps two or three times its former height without making excavations beneath the level of the plain and without carrying material from the bluffs, two and one-half miles distant. There is no evidence that material was obtained by either of these latter means.

*The Views of Dr. A. R. Crook.*—At the Philadelphia meeting of the Geological Society of America, December 29-31, 1914, Dr. A. R. Crook, Chief of the State Museum Division, presented a paper on the "Origin of Monks Mound," based on twenty-five borings made in the north face of the mound, and upon an examination of the surrounding mounds and the valley bluffs two miles away. Quoting from an abstract of this paper which appears in Vol. XXVI, 1915, of the Society, pp. 74, 75, he says:

Twenty-five borings were made in the north and most abrupt side. 1. They showed different strata at different elevations. 2. These strata agree with similar elevations in the other mounds and with soil from the bluff two miles away. 3. Fossil hackberry seeds (*Celtis occidentalis*) and such gastropods as *Pyramidula*, *Succinea*, *Helicina*, and *Physa* are found in beds. 4. A study of the physiography of the mounds makes clear that they occur along the divide between streams, and that their arrangement and individual forms are characteristic of the remnants of stream cutting.

Chemical and mineralogical study of the soil, as well as paleontological and physiographical investigations, indicate that the mounds are the remnants of the glacial and alluvial deposits which at one time filled the valley of the Mississippi River in this region.

It may be well to inquire if all so-called mounds in the Mississippi Valley are not natural topographic forms.

Dr. Crook held to the same view in subsequent papers<sup>3</sup> until May, 1922, when he published a bulletin on *The Origin of the Cahokia Mounds* under the auspices of the Illinois State Museum. In this bulletin, which was written following a field conference between him and the present writer when several of the mounds were excellently exposed for study, he inclines strongly towards the artificial theory of origin and has since definitely expressed himself in favor of that theory.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup>"The Composition and Origin of Monks Mound," *Trans. Ill. Acad. of Sci.*, Vol. 9, 1916, pp. 82-84; Additional Note on Monks Mound, *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, Vol. 29, 1918, pp. 80, 81.

<sup>4</sup>Remarks before the Section of Geology and Geography, Illinois Academy of Science, Galesburg meeting, 1923.

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE MOUNDS

Our chief concern in this connection will be to fix our attention upon those points which are of significance in the question of the origin of the mounds. The reader whose interest carries him into archæological questions and interpretations is referred to (1) Part I of the present volume, (2) a preliminary paper on the Cahokia Mounds by Warren K. Moorehead, and (3) the bibliography (p. 171). If, on the other hand, the reader is interested in a brief summary of the geologic evidences and conclusions he is referred to the summary statement at the close of this paper. The discussion which now follows is a rather detailed treatment of the geologic aspects of the mounds so far as they have been examined.

### NUMBER, SIZE, AND SHAPE

Some eighty-five mounds have been mapped within a radius of about one and one-half miles, and more widely scattered mounds are to be found in adjacent territory. Monks Mound dominates them all. It stands about one hundred feet high above the plain, and the longer side of its rectangular base is about 1,000 feet and its shorter side about seven hundred feet. An inspection of the map, Fig. 1, will show approximately the comparative sizes in ground plan of the rest of the important mounds. The smallest mounds are mere swells of the surface and are not shown on the map. In shape the mounds range from pyramidal forms, with nearly rectangular bases, to elongate ovoid and conical forms. Rain-wash and farming have modified some of the pyramidal mounds and given them sub-rectangular to sub-oval basal outlines. Some are flat-topped and, as in No. 48, have sufficient summit area for a residence site. Practically all of the mounds which are large enough to attract attention have a distinct artificiality in their regularity of form and steepness of slope (Plates V, VI). They lack the irregularity in ground plan and the wide range in summit area so characteristic of erosional remnants and they show no meander scars at their bases or on their slopes. They are but little sculptured by slope-wash—Monks Mound the most of all—which speaks for their recency geologically, although they may be rather ancient

historically. Some of the larger mounds, those about thirty or thirty-five feet high in the vicinity of Monks Mound, show some accordance of level.

### MONKS MOUND

Monks Mound has some peculiarities of form worth noting, which were faithfully described by McAdams:<sup>1</sup>

On the southern end, some thirty feet above the base is a terrace or apron, containing nearly two acres of ground. On the western side, and some thirty feet above the first terrace, is a second one of somewhat less extent. The top of the mound is flat and divided into two parts, the northern end being some four or five feet higher than the southern portion. The summit contains about an acre and a half. Near the middle of the first terrace, at the base of the mound, is a projecting point, apparently the remains of a graded pathway to ascend from the plain to the terrace. The west side of the mound below the second terrace is very irregular, and forms projecting knobs, separated by deep ravines, probably the result of rain-storms. . . . The remaining sides of the structure are quite straight and but little defaced by the hand of time.

It should be added that on the north side, there are projecting spurs, fifty to one hundred feet long and thirty to fifty feet high. Some have horizontal summits, while others are sloping and have the form of approaches. This is the most abrupt side and some gulying has no doubt taken place. On the east side there is some evidence of creep of considerable masses of material, and deposition at the base of the mound of material washed down from above.

The present writer's impression of the form of this huge mound with its platforms and approaches is in harmony with that of Dr. Fenneman, that it "plainly indicates the work of man and not of geologic processes."<sup>2</sup>

### ARRANGEMENT OF THE MOUNDS

There are certain significant points regarding the arrangement of the mounds. (1) The elongate mounds are, in most instances, oriented with respect to the cardinal points of the compass, either north-south or east-west. (2) Some have a striking alignment, as for example, Nos. 19 to 26 and 6 to 11 (see

<sup>1</sup>*Records of Ancient Races in the Mississippi Valley*, St. Louis, 1887.

<sup>2</sup>*Geology and Mineral Resources of the St. Louis Quadrangle*, U. S. Geological Survey Bull. 348, 1911, p. 12.

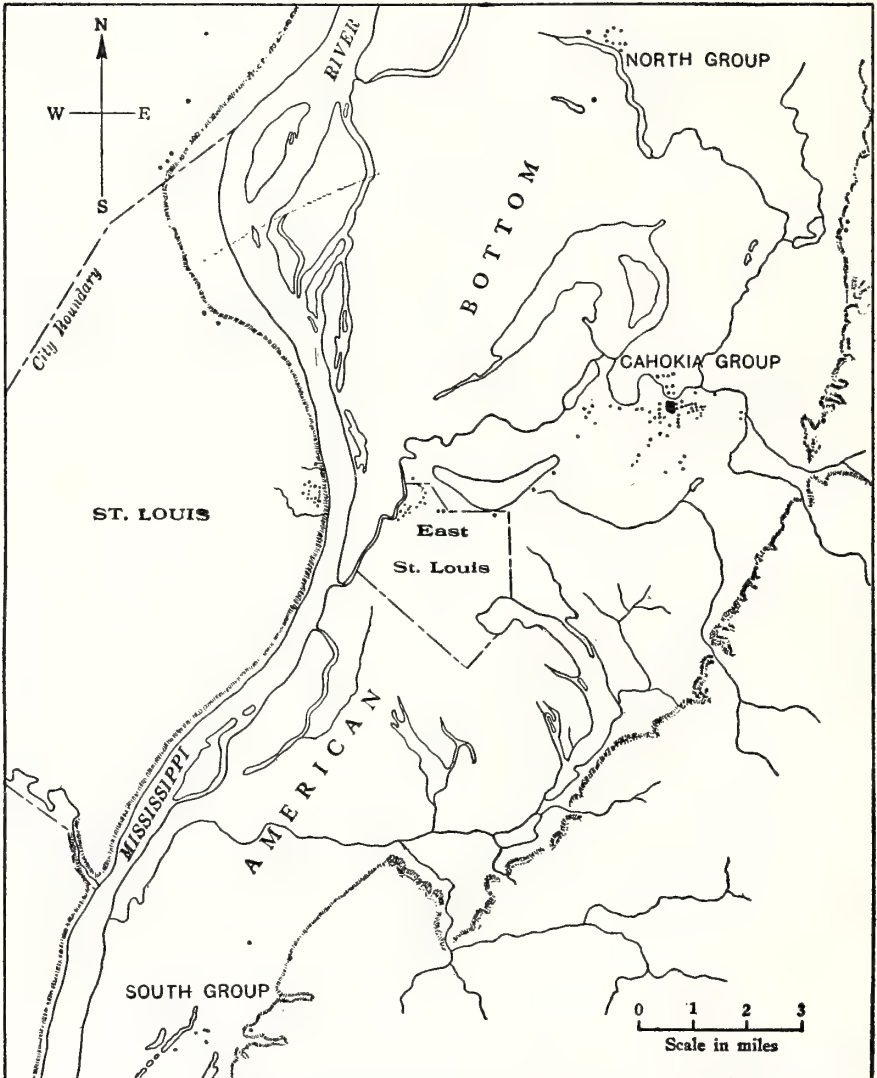


FIG. 11—Map showing the location of the Cahokia group. (After David I. Bushnell, Jr., Smithsonian Institution)

Fig. 1), and this alignment as well as their orientation carries the aspect much more of the human mode of origin than by ordinary physiographic processes. (3) The grouping of the mounds on the American Bottom is shown in Fig. 11. This grouping, as well as the alignment and elongation, is not in harmony with the theory of terrace remnants or any other physiographic origin to which they can tenably be referred.

# THE GEOLOGICAL SETTING OF THE MOUNDS

## TOPOGRAPHIC POSITION

*The American Bottom.*—The Cahokia Mounds are situated on the great flood-plain of the Mississippi River, known as the great American Bottom, some four miles northeast of the center of East St. Louis (Fig. 11). The mounds offer the only relief possessed by this extensive flat except the valley bluffs which bound it. Before the artificial levees were built, large portions of the flood-plain were subject to the highest floods, but so far as the writer could learn there has been no time in the history of the settlement by white man when all of it was under flood-waters. Even today, with the artificial levees, the flood-waters back up into some of the abandoned channels previously occupied by the Mississippi River, as for example the old channel now followed by Cahokia Creek, in its wanderings across the plain.

The highest known flood-level of the Mississippi River at St. Louis was in 1844,<sup>1</sup> when the waters rose 7.58 feet above the city directrix, reaching an altitude of 420.31 feet above sea-level. According to the topographic map of the St. Louis quadrangle, published by the U. S. Geological Survey, involving the site of the Cahokia Mounds, there are considerable areas above the four hundred twenty-foot level along the foot of the east valley wall and in the vicinity of Granite City. Monks Mound and a few others nearby are on a slight swell a little above four hundred twenty feet, but the surface surrounding most of the others appears to be somewhat under that level. Hence, it is thought that many of the mounds were surrounded by this flood. The flood of 1903, two or three feet below that of 1844, reached and covered the low sags in the vicinity of the mounds.

The valley has a maximum width of about twelve miles just north of Granite City and a minimum of three and three-fourths miles south of the village of Cahokia. In the latitude of the mounds it is about nine and one-half miles wide. The valley flat is traversed by many old channels—former courses of the Mississippi River—showing that many shiftings have taken place in recent geological times, and the existence of ox-bow lakes in several of these indicate an occupancy so recent geologically

<sup>1</sup>Woodward's *The St. Louis Bridge*, G. C. Jones and Co., Publishers, St. Louis, 1881, p. 2.



that they have not yet been filled. Besides the distinct abandoned channels, faint sags apparently represent earlier channels.

*The East Valley Wall.*—The east valley wall rises from one hundred fifty to two hundred feet above the valley flat. It is generally a distinct bluff, notably steep in spite of the weak resistance of the Coal Measures shale and Pleistocene clays of which it is chiefly composed, and surprisingly steep when the width of the valley is considered. This has an important bearing upon the activity of the Mississippi River, making it clear that this great stream frequently shifts its course, geologically speaking, striking the valley wall here and there and preventing weathering, slope-wash, and creep from making the slope gentle.

#### THE ALLUVIAL FILLING

*Thickness and Characteristics.*—The filling of the valley is considerable; the bedrock floor lies deep. The upper ten to twelve feet is mud and clay, beneath which is fifty to one hundred feet of sand with subordinate beds or lenses of clay and gravel, and gravel and boulders at the base.<sup>2</sup> The position of the bouldery material at the base has a special significance. Great changes in the volume of the stream take place in response to heavy rainfall or rapid melting of snow over the large basin which the river drains, and this greatly modifies the velocity and the stream's transporting power. At St. Louis, the velocity of the Mississippi River has been known to vary from two and three-fourths miles per hour at low water to eight and one-half miles per hour at high water, or three-fold. In time of high flood, therefore, the stream scours deeply, probably reaching and abrading the bedrock, making it necessary for the piers of the bridges at St. Louis to be sunk into the rock. When the excavations were made by the engineers for the St. Louis bridge, and the bed-rock was laid bare, the rock surface was found to be smooth and water-worn and to be overlain by the heavier debris of river floods.<sup>3</sup> There have been known instances of scour reaching nearly one hundred feet. The larger materials are moved at a slower rate than the smaller, and are the first to be deposited, upon the slackening of the current during the

<sup>2</sup>Fenneman, N. M., *The Physiography of the St. Louis Area*, Ill. State Geol. Survey Bull. 12, p. 6, 1909.

<sup>3</sup>Woodward, *op. cit.*, p. 5.

ebb of the flood. Although the scouring is probably local in the bed of the channel during any one flood, yet in successive floods all points along the channel may become affected.

*The Age of the Alluvial Filling.*—In view of (1) the scouring action of this great stream along its present channel and the alternate play of scour and fill; (2) the abundant evidence that in the past the stream has had almost every conceivable position on the valley-flat; (3) the lateral shifting of the meanders, cutting on the outside of the curves and filling on the inside; (4) the length of post-glacial time having probably been sufficiently long for this great stream working in loose and fine materials to plane the full width of the valley several times, and (5) the gradation from bottom to top of coarse to fine, it would appear that the larger part if not all of the present alluvial filling of the American Bottom has been worked over and repeatedly shifted down-stream and that its present position is due to the action of the stream in the Recent epoch. Therefore, it seems proper to regard the filling, exclusive of terraces, as chiefly post-glacial in age.

#### REMNANTS OF THE ORIGINAL GLACIAL FILLING

Inasmuch as this portion of the Mississippi River received glacial drainage from more than 2,000 miles of ice front of the Wisconsin Glacier—from the basin of Illinois River to the Rocky Mountains—it would be expected that the valley here would show evidence of fill, provided it was given more load than it could carry; and since this locality was far from the ice edge, that such a filling would be composed dominantly of fine material; and further, that since the volume of the glacial waters varied greatly between the winter and summer seasons, the glacial Mississippi behaved much as the modern Mississippi, only on a much larger scale; and moreover, that since the suspended load and bed-load were probably greater, the amount of filling during the recession of floods would average greater and the average level of the flood-plain would be higher.

Evidence of such a condition appears to exist chiefly in the mouths of some of the tributaries,—Canteen Creek and Prairie du Pont Creek, where alluvial terraces are found, some of them rising forty to sixty feet above the Mississippi Valley flat. The material of these terraces, however, is probably not so much that brought down by the Mississippi River as that washed

down from the uplands and deposited in the back-water of the tributaries due to filling in the main valley. But in either case they seem to record a former higher filling in the main valley than now exists, which is the significant point in this connection.

This period of aggradation was brought to a close by the melting back of the ice into the basins of the Great Lakes and Lake Agassiz. From these bodies of water three great streams of relatively clear water combined and formed a Mississippi of more constant volume than before. Just how the amount of this water would compare with the maximum summer floods which had been coming down the valley from the glacier before the lakes came into existence is problematical, for, on the one hand the length of the ice front was now much less, and on the other the climate was becoming warmer and the rate of melting greater. An important point to keep in mind though is this. The waters from Lake Chicago and its contributory area to the east, the waters from Lake Superior, and the waters from Lake Agassiz formed a stream of very large volume, with less fluctuation than when the drainage came direct from the ice, and since most of the sediment had been dropped in the lakes, the outflowing waters were much less loaded.

This condition of flow lasted during the building of several recessional moraines and a corresponding number of periods of ice recession,<sup>4</sup> probably resulting in a lowering of the former glacial flood-plain, and probably to a level considerably below the present plain. Indeed, the previous fill may have been entirely swept away and the rock-floor subjected to abrasion, but this cannot be affirmed.

#### POST-GLACIAL CONDITIONS

With (1) the melting away of the ice from the basin of Mississippi River, (2) the establishment of the outlet of the Great Lakes by way of St. Lawrence River, (3) the disappearance of Lake Agassiz, and (4) the melting of most of the contributing Alpine glaciers of the Rocky Mountains, the drainage conditions of the Mississippi River assumed approximately their present proportions and variations. Inheriting the low gradient of the preceding epoch, the Mississippi of smaller volume must have built up its flood-plain to its present level.

---

<sup>4</sup>Some of the recessional moraines are known to have been built after a readvance of the ice following an unknown amount of melting back, but the volume of water was doubtless less during the advance of the ice than during the retreat.

The widespread distribution of abandoned channels and the absence of any tendency on the part of the present stream to break up into distributaries indicate that the present flood-plain is essentially at grade or some of it is slightly above grade because of the present fairly straight course of the stream. Before the stream assumed its present course, it meandered widely, as the abandoned channels and ox-bow lakes indicate. Under those conditions much of the present flood-plain was formed. With the stream subsequently assuming the present nearly straight course, probably at a time of widespread overflow, its gradient became higher and its transporting power greater, enabling it to develop a narrow flood-plain adjacent to the channel slightly below the rest of the valley flat, thereby reducing for the present the chances and the frequency of widespread flooding other than in the old abandoned channels and adjacent low areas.

#### BEARING UPON THE AGE AND ORIGIN OF THE CAHOKIA MOUNDS

(1) The enormous scour and fill of the Mississippi during the rise and ebb of floods; (2) the fact that the stream has shifted to many different positions over the valley flat; (3) the fact that this shifting has been so frequent that abandoned channels of the second or third stages back are not entirely filled before another shift takes place; (4) the absence of any remnants of filling which clearly correspond to the terraces in the mouths of some of the tributaries; and (5) the fact that the mounds do not show the scars of meander curves on their slopes or at their base as they would if they were remnants of a former higher fill,—when we consider these things, it appears that the mounds are neither natural nor as old as the present valley flat.

If this conclusion is correct, the mounds themselves should reveal this in their constitution; should have no nuclei of natural origin, and should rest upon alluvial materials as a foundation. We may well give our attention to this phase of the question.

## CONSTITUTION OF THE MOUNDS

There was opportunity to study the character and structure of the material in four mounds, and as a matter of record, these will be discussed separately. These mounds were: the James Ramey Mound, No. 33; the Albert Kunnemann Mound, No. 16; the Sam Chucallo Mound; and the Sawmill Mound, No. 39. As will be seen from Fig. 1, these mounds are widely spaced and are fairly representative of the mounds which range in height from twelve to thirty-five feet. The James Ramey Mound, No. 33, situated a quarter mile east of Monks Mound, was the most thoroughly opened and examined in the greatest detail.

### THE JAMES RAMEY MOUND, No. 33

This mound was trenched through its center in a north-south direction, nearly to the level of the surrounding valley flat and a fine opportunity was presented for ascertaining the composition, degree of assortment, arrangement of the materials and their relations to the materials of the valley flat.

*General Description of the West Face.*—In the west face (Fig. 12), Formation 1 is made up chiefly of yellowish sand with balls and irregularly shaped inclusions of dark silt scattered through it. It is unstratified and has the spotted and lumpy appearance of man-made fills. It is cut off abruptly at the south end. Formation 2 is a mixed gray and yellowish silt and sand with scattered charcoal fragments. The upper surface is strongly undulating. At (a) is a reddish brown horizon having every appearance of having been the site of a bonfire. Charcoal fragments occur in the material. Formation 3 is a mixed gray and yellowish silt and sand with included masses such as is shown in the figure. In the north end is a peculiar mixed mass, (c), and a filling in a well-defined cut-out, (b). At (a) is another apparently burned horizon with charcoal fragments associated with it. Formation 4 is a yellowish sand with an abundance of charcoal fragments up to one and one-half inches in diameter. Formation 5 is finely stratified sand about eight inches thick—the only clear case of water stratification in the section. It ends bluntly at its northern end and pinches out at its southern. Formation 6 is a fine yellowish sand with bits of charcoal. Formation 7 is a well-defined horizon with an ap-

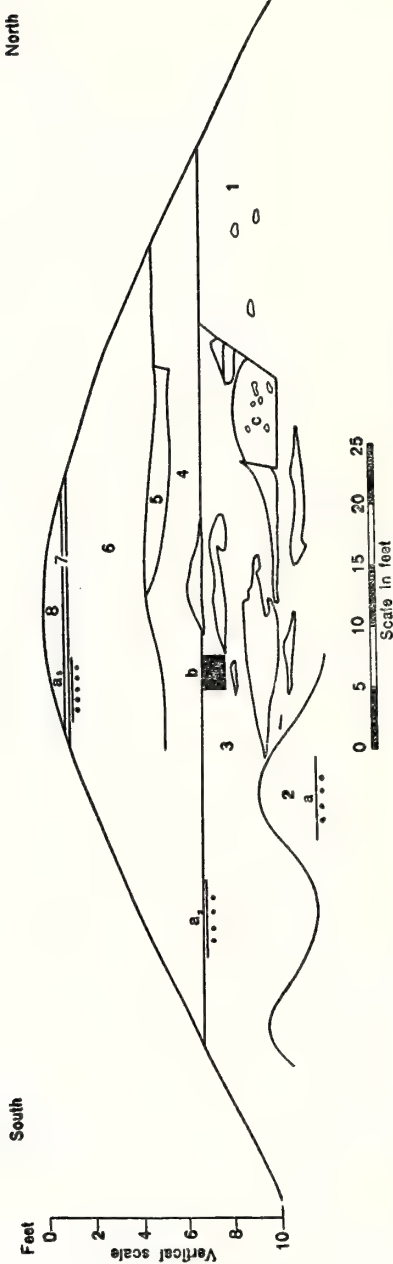


FIG. 12—Diagrammatic sketch of the west face of the trench, James Ramey Mound. Subsequent excavation extended the section to a depth of about twenty feet.

parent burned horizon at its south end. Formation 8 is a fine grayish yellow sand with some small lumps. Throughout the whole section bones and pottery, artifacts of flint, and angular fragments of travertine and charcoal were found, varyingly oriented. Near the center of the cut a boring was put down with a post-hole digger, and at a depth of about twenty feet from the top of the mound, a fairly large piece of charcoal and a piece of pottery were found. Another boring yielded bones and pottery at a depth of eighteen to nineteen feet. Regarding the occurrence of human skeletal remains in this and other mounds, the reader is referred to Part I of this publication.

*Detailed Description of a Vertical Section in two Dimensions.*

—A chimney-like section, three feet square, was dug in the west face of the main trench and a detailed sketch and description were made at the south and west sides of this section. (Fig. 13.) The description follows:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
7. Fine grayish yellow sand, with lumps of gray clay which give a spotted effect; a few small fragments of charcoal up to one-fourth inch in diameter; the material effervesces to the surface although it is dark in the upper three to four inches	2 to 3
6. Interlayered dark and light fine sand and sandy silt, the lower portion with many charcoal fragments, a scattering in the upper part; layers discontinuous and horizontal in the south face, dipping southward in the west face; a few fragments of bones (one a bone of a bird); some fragments of pottery	2¼
5. Mottled fine silty sand in indefinite layers; a heterogeneous mixture of highly calcareous and slightly calcareous material with no indication of secondary concentration or differential solution; no assorting; a few tiny particles of charcoal. . . . .	3¾
4. Dark clay layer, something like gumbo, with fragments of pottery and charcoal; thickness. . . . .	¾
3. Mostly dark fine sandy silt with light mottling, some brownish clay; irregular lenses and balls of the light colored silt in a dark matrix, and lenses and balls of the dark in the light; the light parts are more calcareous than the dark; a few charcoal and pottery fragments. . . . .	5¼
2. Fine stratified silty sand, yellowish gray; calcareous; charcoal fragments mostly minute but two fragments up to one inch; layers of sediment thin, numbering three or four to the inch. These beds fade out to the east, changing upward to mixed material as if the stratified portion were deposited in a local pool in the mound. . . . .	1
1. Massive dark gray silt, no stratification, scattered specks of charcoal, non-calcareous. . . . .	1¾

The Cahokia Mounds

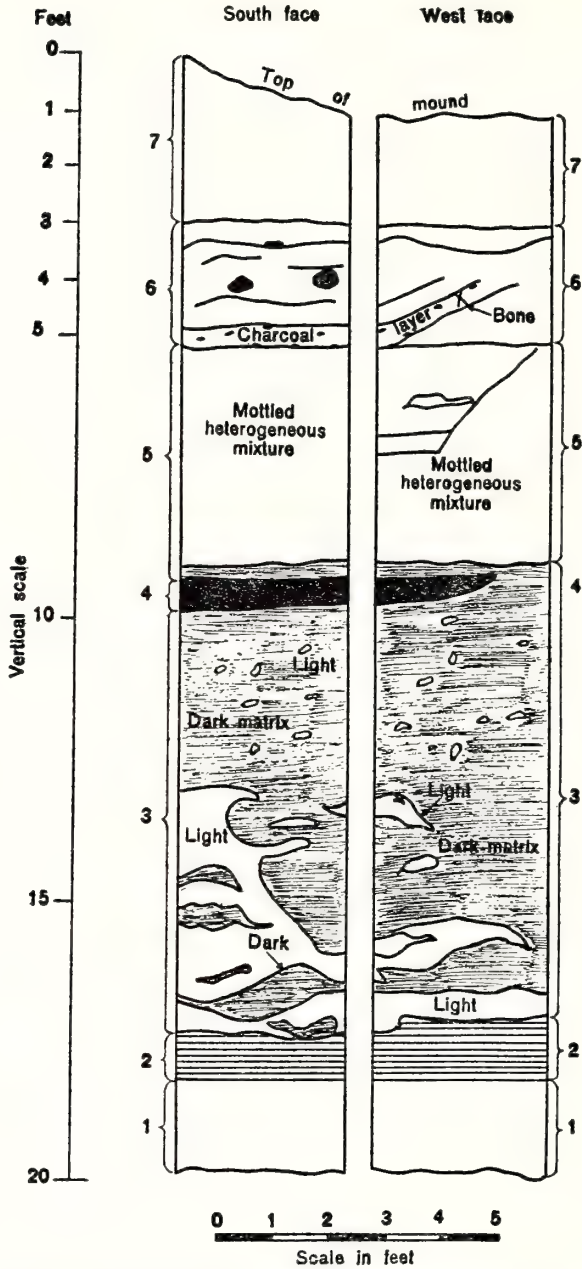


FIG. 13—Diagrammatic sketch of a chimney section made in the west face of trench, James Ramey Mound.



*Special Features of the West Face.*—Bones and fragments of pottery were found throughout the vertical section of the mound. In the west face of the trench was found a linear series of holes, about thirty in number in a distance of twenty-three feet, most of them less than six inches in diameter and about two feet in depth. Although they had been completely covered over by at least nine feet of earth, the holes were only partly filled with dirt. In the bottom of many of them occurred brown decayed bone; a small leg bone of a bird was still preserved. It appeared that originally the holes had been filled with bones before the overlying earth was put on and later the bones decomposed leaving the holes unfilled and a residue of bone material in the bottom. The series trended nearly due north-south and while most of the holes were vertical, a few slanted ten degrees from the vertical. The full series was not entirely uncovered, for the north end curved slightly west of north into the west face. Such features must be human in their origin.

*General Description of the East Face.*—A section of the east face is shown in Fig. 14. A-A' is a well defined horizontal horizon marked by burned lenses (b) and short stretches of coarse sand (c). The burned lenses are two and one-half inches in maximum thickness and up to three feet long. They are reddest in the center with charcoal fragments immediately beneath and at the ends. The materials, including the sands, effervesce with acid. Below the sharp horizon is Formation 1, a dark, fairly compact silt, irregularly layered and with greenish lenses and some yellow sand layers. In this case the dark is distinctly less calcareous than the light, and charcoal is generally scattered through them. Above the sharp horizon, is Formation 2, a fine sandy silt mottled dark and light, arranged without order in irregular lenses, balls and masses up to four inches in diameter. Both the light and the dark are calcareous, and charcoal fragments are scattered through them promiscuously. Bones and fragments of pottery were found from bottom to top of the section. A large marine shell was uncovered near the west end three or four feet below the surface. Similar shells were found in other parts of the mound, one at a depth of seventeen feet.

The mound was about twenty-three feet high. At a depth of nineteen and one-half feet, pottery, bones, and flint were found, some of them on end. The containing matrix was a fine, sandy silt, gray with brownish tinge and slightly calcareous. A fragment of calcareous tufa and a one-inch fragment of charcoal,

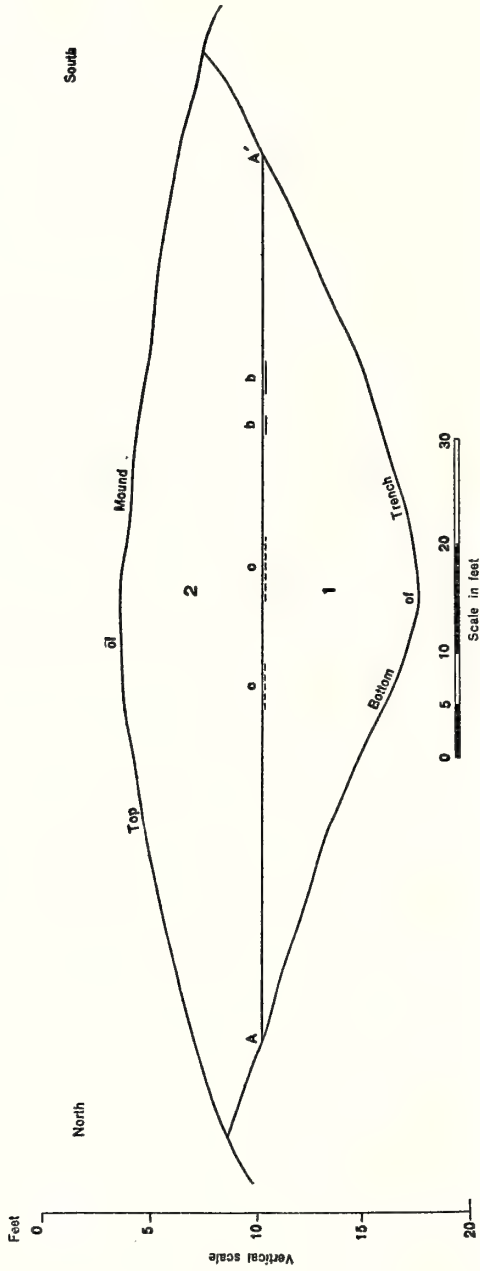


FIG. 14—Diagram of the arrangement of materials in the east face of the trench, James Ramey Mound.

which clearly exhibited the structure of the original wood were found at the eighteen-foot level. All of the material, save for a thin lens of finely stratified sand, had the appearance of having been dumped, mixed, and spread by human agencies. It was indeed a motley mixture.

*Significant Features Common to Both Sides of the Trench.*—

(1) The materials are not stratified or assorted like waterlaid sediments, except as above mentioned, though they have a stratiform arrangement.

(2) The contacts of the various layers are quite irregular in detail, (Fig. 15), sharp projections of one fitting into the sharp indentations of another. This shows that the surface upon which each layer was spread was irregular in detail although nearly level, and could not be due to deposition in quiet or slack-water. They are such as would develop from human hands spreading silts and fine sands over a surface previously smoothed artificially but retaining minute irregularities. This is also in harmony with the mixed aspect of the materials.

(3) Some horizons in the mound are reddish brown, with charcoal fragments closely associated. The reddish color does not appear to be due to natural processes of oxidation in view of the presence of the charcoal, which is reducing in its chemical reaction, and of the promiscuous and limited occurrence of material of reddish color. Its association with charcoal would seem, on the other hand, to point to bonfire oxidation.

(4) Both sides of the trench show a content of bones of several forms of life; shells of gastropods whose habitats vary from terrestrial, fluviatile, and lacustrine of local occurrence to the large ornate marine shells from the Gulf of Mexico; shells which have been shaped or perforated as ornaments of utility and dress; artifacts of various sorts; flint chips which are at least in part refuse of the Indian stone arts; and travertine fragments apparently derived from local spring deposits. Many of these lack the orientation with the stratiform character of the layers which would be expected if they were alluvial in origin. Such an assemblage of "fossils," such a promiscuous arrangement, and such a complete absence of signs of water attrition is decidedly in agreement with the conception of an artificial mode of origin for this mound.

(5) Both sides of the trench show planes of separation which run clear through the mound, thus revealing that the mound

was built by stages to platform summits, each of which was used for a time before the mound was built to another level.

*The Basal Contact of the Mound.*—An important question bearing on the origin of the mounds is whether or not the materials of the surrounding plain pass under them. When the trench through Mound No. 33 reached approximately the level of the surface outside of the mound, the writer hoped to ascertain the exact situation by having three pits dug, two of them in the bottom of the trench, near the center of the mound, each three and one-half feet square and four feet deep, the

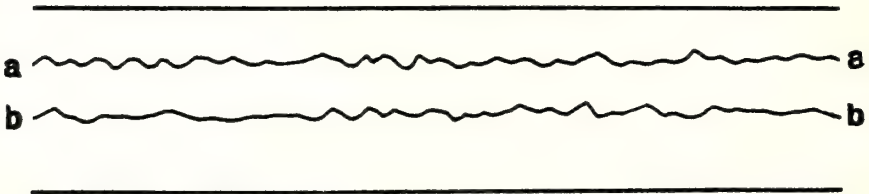


FIG. 15—Diagrammatic sketch of the minutely irregular contacts between the layers of fine material in the mounds.

third outside of the mound, one hundred ninety feet east and one hundred thirty-seven feet south of the center of the mound, on the valley flat, this pit being three and one-half feet square and three and one-half feet deep.

The pit outside of the mound exposed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
4. Black soil, no pebbles..... grades into	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{3}$
3. Non-calcareous silt, dirty buff..... grades into	$\frac{1}{2}$
2. Non-calcareous silt, yellowish, somewhat mottled, one band somewhat rusty colored, three-fourths to one inch wide...	$1\frac{1}{2}$
1. Sandy silt, non-calcareous, yellowish, watery.....	1

All of the latter section looked natural. There was found no pottery, charcoal, bones, flints, shells, lumps, or other material of human derivation, and neither was there any mixing of materials.

The pit nearest the center of the mound showed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
3. Dark gray, sandy silt, slightly effervescent with acid, contain- ing an occasional charcoal fragment.....	$\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$

- 2. Brownish yellow silt, containing old rootlet channels stained rusty, non-calcareous, limonite, and pellets of  $\text{CaCO}_3$  up to three-fourths inch; no distinct stratification, no charcoal or artifacts here; no sign of disturbance; has every appearance of being a former sub-soil. . . . . 1
- 1. Fine silty sand, calcareous, scattering of small shells of gastropods, grayish yellow color, some iron oxide spots and streaks, no sign of disturbance. . . . . 2

The second pit beneath the mound, dug eight feet south and fifteen feet west of the center, starting twenty feet below the top, showed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
2. Grayish yellow, fine sandy silt with old root canals stained rusty, very slight effervescence with acid, apparently an old sub-soil. . . . .	1 1/2
1. Yellowish gray, fine sand, calcareous, after striking water the sand behaved like quicksand. . . . .	2 1/2

These materials were all undisturbed and had every aspect of being natural. They seem to be without question the materials of the flood-plain passing under the mound.

### THE ALBERT KUNNEMANN MOUND, No. 11

About three-fourths of a mile north of Monks Mound, on the north side of Cahokia Creek, is a large mound known as the Albert Kunnemann Mound. Along a part of the north side of this mound, an excavation was made giving a fairly abrupt face sixty feet long and thirty feet high, the lower ten to fifteen feet being covered. The arrangement of the materials is shown in Fig. 16. Upon cursory inspection they appear to constitute a stratified deposit, but inasmuch as a detailed examination revealed the structure to merely simulate stratification, the details are deserving of some attention. The appearance of stratification is due to two thin horizontal layers, 1 and 3 in the diagram, about four feet apart, the upper one having a position about fourteen feet below the top. Layer No. 1 is a dark sandy silt, No. 3 a black soil-like material. No. 3 was clearly not a soil in place, however, for the contact with the underlying materials is sharp. At this horizon a large bowl and a burned "altar" were found by Mr. Moorehead in the course of the excavations. Between these layers is No. 2 which is a sand containing broken shells, the spots being due to dark lumps of incoherent sandy

silt, which could hardly have been handled by water. Near the east end are oblique black mixed streaks. The sharp irregular contacts of the thin fine layers show that they were not deposited in quiet water but were spread over a level surface, having minute irregularities, by some such agency as man. Horizon (4) is a spotted sand with scattered charcoal, small shells,<sup>1</sup> pot-

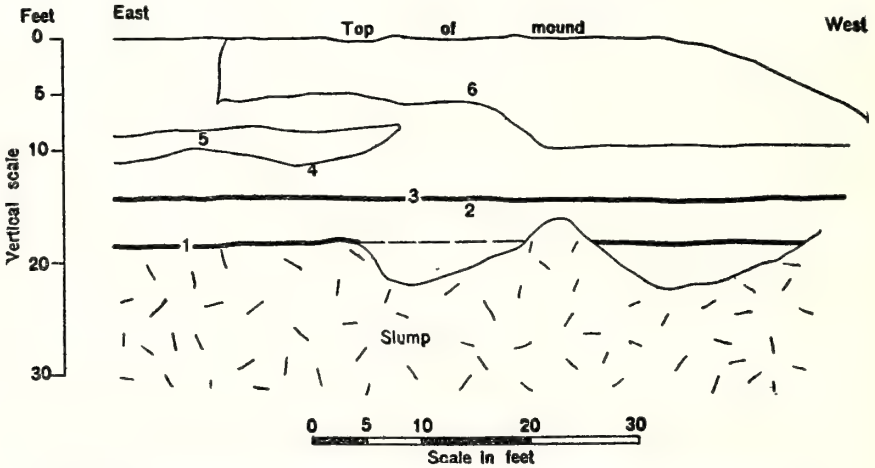


FIG. 16—Diagrammatic sketch showing the arrangement of the materials in the Albert Kunnemann Mound.

tery, bones, and chips of flint. Horizon (5) is a lens in horizon (4) of mixed gray and dark gumbo with charcoal. Its exposed length was about twenty-four feet, and thickness two to three feet. Horizon (6) is a mixed dark and gray gumbo-like material showing no stratification. The top of the mound is now flat but it is reported to have originally been some fifteen feet higher and to have consummated in a point, the removed material having been scattered over the adjoining fields.

The materials of this mound in their lack of assortment, absence of water stratification, presence of man-made features, mixed materials, and scattering of artifacts are against the natural theory of origin and strongly favor the artificial theory.

<sup>1</sup>The following were identified by Curator F. C. Baker: Gastropods: *Physa gyrina* (Say.) (a common fresh-water shell living in summer-dry ponds), *Vivipara connectoides* (W. G. B.) (fragments); Pelecypod; *Anodonta grandis* (Say.) (fragment); miscellaneous: shell head of marine conch (*Busycon*), vertebra of small fish.

## THE SAM CHUCALLO MOUND

The Sam Chucallo Mound is situated about three miles southwest of Monks Mound and one-fourth mile north of Lansdowne Heights at the brink of an old channel.

It is about one hundred feet in diameter and ten to twelve feet high above the surface to the east.

As the result of digging an east-west trench through the mound, eight feet deep at the maximum, and forty feet long, it was possible to examine the materials to advantage. The north face of the trench showed a structure as in Fig. 17. Most of the material is Formation 2, a dark silty clay, the color apparently being due to humus, and mixed in the silty clay are irregular lumps and streaks of gray to dark gumbo which show minute rusty, ramifying canals and imprints of rootlets. The rootlets are almost gone, but such as are found are in these minute canals. Apparently the oxidation of ferrous compounds was favored along these minute canals by the ready access of oxidating ground water. Intimately mixed with the gumbo is some fine sand.

At the base of this motley arrangement of materials is Formation 1, a yellow to grayish-yellow fine sand, the contact being nearly level for most of the distance but sloping and passing beneath the trench at the east and west ends. Mixed with this sand in heterogeneous fashion are lumps of black soil, and the sand itself is a mixture of calcareous and non-calcareous materials. It contains snail shells,<sup>2</sup> some in fragments, some soft, and some mashed. All of the aspects of this sand layer are unlike those of deposits made by natural agencies and like those made by man.

The south face shows the same sequence and mixing, but the sand layer, No. 1, at the bottom is a little lower than in the north face, and near the center the sand layer is interrupted sharply by gumbo and black silty clay. (See Fig. 18.) A human skeleton was found just below, at about eight feet below the summit of the mound. Clearly, after the sand was accumulated there by man, the sand was cut into for burial purposes, and it

---

<sup>2</sup>The following species were identified by Curator F. C. Baker: Gastropods: *Planorbis trivolvis* (Say.), *Lymnaea palustris* (Müller), *Segmentina armigera* (Say.), *Helicodiscus parallelus* (Say.). The first three snails live in small ponds which may become wholly or partially dry in summer; the fourth one is a land snail living near water.

appears that the overlying material was brought there and dumped, thereby increasing the height of the mound.

This mound had two stages of building. First a low conical mound was built, then a burial was made, and finally it was covered over, making the sides steeper and the summit rounded. It is to be noted that this is in contrast to the platform-type of mound as represented by the James Ramey Mound No. 33.

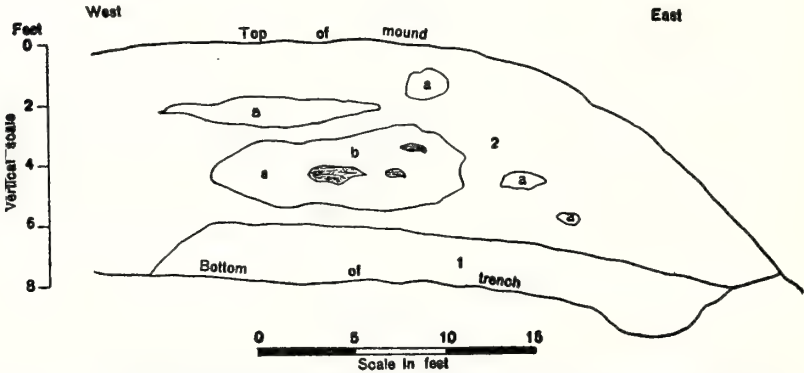


FIG. 17—Diagrammatic sketch of the structure of the materials in the north face of the trench, Sam Chucallo Mound.

### THE SAWMILL MOUND, No. 39

A low mound about 1,000 feet northwest of Monks Mound, on the south side of Cahokia Creek, was opened for a depth somewhat below the ground-water level for wet seasons. About thirteen feet was exposed. The upper three to five feet consist of gumbo material with a few small fragments of charcoal and pottery, and lumps of yellow sandy silt. Below this are yellowish stratified sandy silts, the layers having very irregular contacts, dipping to the east, and showing lumps of dark incoherent silt up to one and one-half inches. The materials are somewhat calcareous in spots, but at no particular horizon. The arrangement of the materials has every aspect of being due to human dumping.

### AUGER BORINGS ON MONKS MOUND

The size of Monks Mound forbade any extensive exploratory work and hence no decisive evidence was obtained regarding its



constitution. Its artificial form, however, invited some investigation to determine the trend of the evidence, and although it is realized that borings are not conclusive, yet it was felt that they would show something. Three borings were made on the summit and two on the east slope, by means of an auger one and one-fourth inches in diameter, attached to sections which permitted penetration to a depth of seventeen and one-half feet.

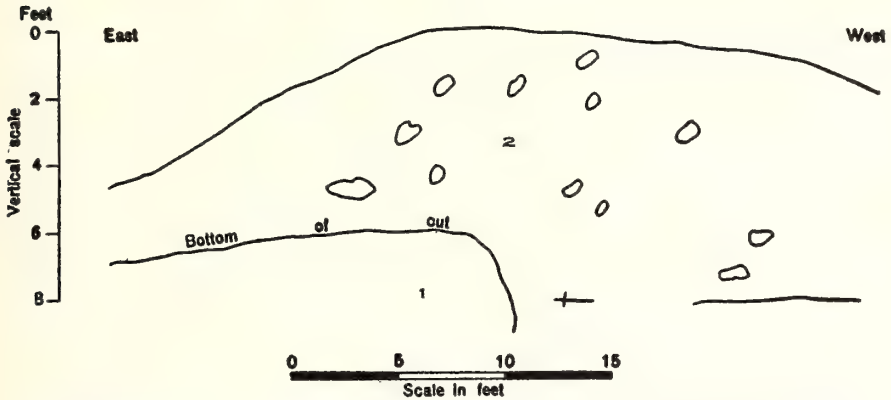


FIG. 18—Diagrammatic sketch of the structure of the materials in the south face of the trench, Sam Chucallo Mound.

By digging pits three feet deep, the total depth penetrated on the summit was twenty and one-half feet. Samples were laid out in succession and carefully examined and described.

*Boring No. 1.*—A pit three feet deep was dug on the summit near the north end, which showed black soil with charcoal and fragments of pottery at the bottom. The boring was started in the bottom of this pit, and the following materials were revealed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
3. Sandy silt, dark, with one- to two-inch streaks of fine sand, light gray in color, some of the dark shows mixing with the light, <sup>3</sup> resembling the exposed materials in the smaller mounds. ....	8
Changes to	
2. Fine sand, dirty buff, loose; a little ochre-sand. ....	3

<sup>3</sup>The writer satisfied himself after careful inspection that the mixing was not due to the auger. The relationships of the materials are markedly similar to those found in the exposed mounds.

1. Grayish yellow sand, showing a little admixture of dark silt and some thin streaks of light ochre sand, strongly effervescent at seventeen feet but not effervescent at the bottom except in spots. . . . . 6½

*Boring No. 2.*—About fifty feet south of Boring No. 1 a pit three feet deep was dug, all of it being in black soil which contained a few pieces of charcoal. The boring in the bottom of this showed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
6. Fine sandy silt, dirty gray, non-calcareous. . . . .	9
5. Black clay with a thin streak of fine sand, a piece of charcoal at a depth of thirteen and one-half feet from the surface . . . . .	2
4. Fine sand, somewhat silty, moderately calcareous. . . . .	4
3. Dark sandy silt, ochre pellets. . . . .	¼
2. Fine sand, silty. . . . .	½
1. Dark clay, like gumbo, with streaks of fine sand. . . . .	1¾

*Boring No. 3.*—This boring was made in the bottom of a pit three feet deep, about fifty feet south of Boring No. 2, the pit showing dark soil with small chips of brick in the top and charcoal fragments below, changing to dirty silty sand in the bottom. The boring revealed:

	<i>Thickness Feet</i>
3. Fine silty sand, some pellets of limonite and rusty streaks, some trace of charcoal and some evidence of mixing, slightly calcareous at the base. . . . .	10½
2. Intermixture of dark clay and fine yellow sand, a fragment of charcoal one-half inch in length about sixteen feet below the original surface, non-calcareous. . . . .	5
1. Dark clay, like gumbo; trace of charcoal at depth of nineteen feet below the original surface, non-calcareous. . . . .	2

The dark clay and the mixture of materials are similar to that seen in the various human mounds previously described. The presence of charcoal in the lower part of the section as well as in the upper is also indicative that this material has had human associations.

*Boring No. 4.*—On the east slope due east of Boring No. 1, a pit was dug to a level of sixteen feet below the top of the mound at Boring No. 1, and the back edge of the pit was cut back about four and one-half feet horizontally from the slope, developing a vertical face four feet high. The back face showed a mixture of materials, but whether or not they were in place could not be definitely ascertained. A boring was put down about three feet from the natural slope, which showed:

Thickness  
Feet

- |                                                                                                                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 2. Mottled gray and ochre and grayish yellow and black silt, calcareous in spots at a depth of one to three feet from the top of the boring, non-calcareous below..... | 12½ |
| 1. Black, tenacious, humus clay, like gumbo, with some suggestion of a gray mixture, non-calcareous.....                                                               | 5   |

The mixture of materials, the rather anomalous relation of non-calcareous beneath calcareous without the usual additional evidence of an interval of weathering, and the gumbo-like clay at the base, are indicative of a human mode of origin. The end of the auger reached a level thirty-three and one-half feet below the top of the mound. It is of course not possible, without trenching or tunneling, to demonstrate that these materials pass into the mound. Even though the upper part of the boring may be in slump material, the lower part is believed to be deep enough to pass through the slump.

*Boring No. 5.*—A pit was dug eleven feet lower vertically than the preceding, or twenty-seven feet below the summit of the mound, and a boring was made three feet from the outer edge and three feet vertically below the slope. The materials found by boring were sixteen feet of blue-black clay with thin layers of light gray and ochre-mottled clay, all non-calcareous and without pebbles.

*Statement of Conclusions.*—Such chance as these borings afford for ascertaining the nature and arrangement of the materials, indicates that they are man-laid. They are at least in line with the evidence offered years ago from the dug well on the west side of the mound and described by Flagg. (See p. 16.) Repeating a previous remark, these borings, while made carefully, cannot be regarded as the equivalent in scientific value of open trenches, but it is to be noted that the results are consistent with the artificial form of the mound.

#### COMPARISON WITH THE MATERIALS OF THE EAST VALLEY BLUFF

Inasmuch as it has been asserted that the materials of the mounds are similar to the materials of the valley bluffs, the writer made a careful examination of the excellent road-cut exposures recently made along the National Highway where it ascends the bluffs directly east of Monks Mound. The deepest cut is at least twenty-five feet deep and reveals only loess from

the foot of the bluff to the top. Judging from the adjacent localities, the loess is a thick mantle concealing the underlying glacial drift and bed-rock, the present grade of the road nowhere being down to the level of the underlying materials.

The loess is loose and friable, floury, gritty, and easily blown. It contains a rather prolific mollusca fauna, the following having been collected, the large species occurring mostly in the lower part:

<i>Polygyra appressa</i> (Say.)	<i>Pupoides marginatus</i> (Say.)
<i>Pyramidula alternata</i> (Say.)	<i>Succinea retusa</i> (Lea.)
<i>Pyramidula shimekii</i> (Pilsbry)	<i>Succinea vermeta</i> (Say.)
<i>Gastrocopta contracta</i> (Say.)	<i>Helicina occulta</i> (Say.)

From a grayish color in the lower part, the loess grades through yellowish and buff to brownish in the upper part. In places it presents a slight pinkish cast. On the slope it is rarely leached of calcium carbonate more than four or five feet, and generally less, but below this leached zone it is highly calcareous. Save for a few places where there is a semblance of bedding, stratification is generally lacking. Some sub-spherical concretions are scattered through it, and along horizontal or gently inclined fracture planes there is a limy concentration, the product of the dissolving action of ground water above and precipitation below.

In all of the cuts, there was no such mixture of materials as occur in the excavated mounds; no sign of human disturbance; no content of human implements, flint chips, sea shells, pottery, charcoal fragments, specimens of travertine, burned horizons, bones of animals nor any other evidence of human activity; no content of gumbo lenses or balls or irregular masses; no promiscuous mixing of calcareous and non-calcareous materials. In short, there is no possibility whatsoever of correlating the materials of the bluffs with the layers of the mounds. Some loess may have been secured from the bluff and used with various materials of the Mississippi flood-plain in the building of the mounds, thus accounting for some of the loess fossils reported from the mounds, but the quantity of such material found in the mounds is very small.

In the mouth of Canteen Creek Valley, are terrace remnants with a summit reaching the four hundred eighty-foot level on the point of a spur where an Indian Mound, twenty feet or more in height, is situated. Many flint chips occur in the soil but no exposure of old alluvial materials could be found. A gully

wash on the south side exposes seven to eight feet of fossiliferous buff loess. The terrace has a maximum width of about three hundred yards. About one-fourth mile farther up the valley is another terrace remnant. On the south side of the creek a thirty-five-foot exposure in the valley wall shows only loess, yellowish in color, with a mottling of gray and buff. Another road-cut, twenty to twenty-five feet deep, on the north side of Schoenberger Creek, near the interurban tracks, exposes only loess. A new highway cut at Edgemont just north of the cross-roads shows reddish loess with large, sub-spiral snail shells, beneath buff loess.

About one mile southwest of Caseyville, the Pennsylvanian strata make up a considerable portion of the bluff.

## SUMMARY OF THE EVIDENCE AND CONCLUSIONS

The present study of the external characteristics and geological setting of the mounds, and of the exposures made in four of them, has yielded the following lines of evidence bearing upon their mode of origin:

1. The summit area of all of the mounds is so limited that this fact alone minimizes the force of the suggestion that they are terrace remnants of a former higher filling of the Mississippi River Valley.

2. Their pyramidal, ovate, and conoid shapes are not in keeping with the usual irregular outlines of erosion remnants and this, together with their steep uniform slopes, carries the aspect of an artificial mode of origin. They are clearly not sand dunes, kames, eskers, or natural, constructional forms of any sort.

3. The dominant orientation of the elongate mounds with the cardinal points of the compass, and the striking alignment of many of the mounds, are difficult to explain on the basis of the natural theory, and point strongly to their being man-arranged and man-made.

4. The absence of meander scars on the slopes of the mounds or at their base is out of harmony with the idea that they are terrace remnants.

5. A critical consideration of the history of the alluvial filling of the Mississippi River Valley and of the behavior and capacity for work of that master stream, together with the evidences of its great activity and shifting, makes it appear doubtful if any of the original fill is present in the valley, although such a possibility can hardly be precluded. According to this view, the glacial filling was probably removed by the voluminous waters of Lake Chicago, Lake Duluth, and Lake Agassiz, and the present filling is the result of the "scour and fill" and "cut and fill" processes of the present shifting and oscillatory stream.

6. If the mounds are terrace remnants of a former higher filling, the materials of which they are composed should show the stratification and assortment of that type of filling. If the filling was glacial till, the materials should be of that character; if eolian, they should be limited in texture to that size which wind can carry; if lacustrine, they should be characteristic of quiet water deposition except near the short line; if fluvial they

should show the texture and structure of materials deposited by running water. The materials of all four mounds examined do not show the characteristics of any of these physiographic agencies. They are stratiform but not stratified; they are mainly of fine materials—silts, fine sands and gumbo—but unassorted, lumps and masses of one kind being intercalated with materials of another kind, and bones, artifacts, flints, travertine fragments, charcoal and pottery being scattered throughout without any suggestion of a mechanical separation or orientation; the contacts of the layers are minutely jagged and not smooth; calcareous materials are mixed heterogeneously with non-calcareous materials; salt-water shells from the Gulf of Mexico occur indiscriminately with local fresh-water shells; burned layers occur at various horizons; and a long series of holes with bone refuse in their bottoms was found in one mound. Such mixture, such an arrangement, such a complex association of unusual materials, are characteristic only of man-made mounds.

7. In the mound which was opened down to its base, undisturbed material, characteristic of an old sub-soil zone and similar to natural flood-plain materials was found to underlie the mound. In this case the mound possessed no original nucleus, and if any is present in the other three mounds, which were opened almost to their base, they must be trivial.

In the face of these evidences it is difficult to conclude other than that the mounds which have been thus far exposed are of human origin, and in view of the external features of the others, it seems probable that they are also the product of human activity, the case being less clear for Monks Mound than for any other because of its large size and the possibility of it possessing a considerable nucleus. But it seems fair to say that its artificial form and the evidence derived from auger borings is consistent with the view that a large part of it at least is the work of the Mound Builders. Further exploratory work on these mounds will be observed with interest by both the geologist and archæologist.

8. The two smaller mounds herein described appear to have always been sub-conical in the various stages of building, whereas the two larger mounds had platform summits at various stages.





APPENDICES A, B, C, D

---

A. THE USE OF MOLLUSCAN SHELLS BY THE CAHOKIA  
MOUND BUILDERS

---

B. SOME RESEARCHES IN THE ILLINOIS RIVER VALLEY  
NEAR HAVANA, ILLINOIS

---

C. THE DICKSON MOUND AND THE LOG TOMB  
BURIALS AT LIVERPOOL

---

D. CAHOKIA BIBLIOGRAPHY



APPENDIX A  
THE USE OF MOLLUSCAN SHELLS BY THE  
CAHOKIA MOUND BUILDERS<sup>1</sup>

FRANK COLLINS BAKER,  
Museum of Natural History, University of Illinois

The use of the Mollusca by aboriginal man has received scant attention from students of the Mollusca. Stearns,<sup>2</sup> many years ago, published a very able paper on the use of molluscan shells as primitive money, but the wide use of shells for many purposes has been noted almost exclusively by ethnologists. Figures and descriptions of these are scattered through the reports and bulletins of the Bureau of American Ethnology and in papers and reports by archæologists. One of the best summaries of the use of molluscan shells may be found in Moorehead's *Stone Age in America*, pp. 117-133.

The excavation and study of the Cahokia group of mounds near East St. Louis, Illinois, carried on by Professor W. K. Moorehead under the auspices of the University of Illinois, has given unusual opportunity to study the use of the Mollusca by the ancient Mound Builders, at least in this region.

The molluscan shells may be divided into two groups: those of marine origin and those gathered from near-by streams and ponds—fresh water shells. The latter may be considered first.

FRESH WATER MOLLUSCA

An examination of the region about the Cahokia Mounds indicates that there were numerous bodies of water as well as creeks (and the Mississippi River) from which mollusks could be obtained. The collection contains specimens from both creek and river, as well as a few from ponds and swales.

MUSSEL SHELLS PROBABLY OBTAINED MAINLY FROM  
THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER

*Elliptio dilatatus* (Raf.) Spike or Lady-finger. Common. A fine specimen of this shell, which had been made into a nose or

<sup>1</sup>Contribution from the Museum of Natural History, University of Illinois, No. 31.

<sup>2</sup>*Ethno-Conchology: A Study of Primitive Money*. By R. E. C. Stearns. An. Rep. Smithsonian Institute, 1887, Part II, p. 297.

ear ornament, was found at a depth of 20 feet in the James Ramey Mound. The purple nacre of the interior was beautifully preserved.

*Proptera alata megaptera* (Raf.) Pink Heel-splitter. An effigy representing a human head was found in the Sawmill Mound (a burial structure) made from a piece of this shell. A gorget or ornament of peculiar design made from this species was found in burial mounds 19, 20, 21 (overlapping mounds). This species was not common.

*Megalonaias gigantea* (Barnes) Washboard. A medium sized specimen from the James Ramey Mound had been made into a shell hoe. Very rare. Fragments believed to be of this species were found mixed with deer bones.

*Amblema costata* (Raf.) Three-ridge. Found in all mounds, common. One specimen from James Ramey Mound made into a hoe.

*Amblema peruviana* (Lam.) Blue-point. Rare.

*Quadrula quadrula* (Raf.) Maple-leaf. Common.

*Quadrula cylindrica* (Say.) Rabbit's-foot. Rare.

*Cyclonaias tuberculata* (Raf.) A specimen (broken) from mounds 19, 20, 21, had been used as a hoe. Rare.

*Truncilla truncata* (Raf.) Deer-toe. Rare. Found at depth of twenty-one feet in James Ramey Mound near the bottom of the structure.

*Lampsilis fallaciosa* (Smith) Simpson. Slough sand shell. Rare.

*Lampsilis anodontoides* (Lea.) Yellow sand shell. Not common.

*Lampsilis siliquoidea* (Barnes) Fat mucket. Not common.

*Lampsilis ovata* (Say.) Pocket-book mussel. Rare. A specimen from the cemetery at Pittsburg Lake, south of the Cahokia group, had been used as an ornament, several holes being drilled in the side.

*Lampsilis ventricosa* (Barnes) Pocket-book mussel. Specimens of this mussel were common in all mounds and fragments occurred in village site debris. Two specimens from Pittsburg Lake cemetery had been variously cut along the anterior margin. It is thought that these were used as scoops or spoons.

*Ligumia recta latissima* (Raf.) Black sand shell. Rare.

## SNAIL SHELLS

*Anculosa praerosa* (Say.) River snail. This snail was used largely for beads. The side was ground until a perforation was made into the cavity of the body whorl and the shells could then be strung on threads or cords through this hole and the natural opening at the aperture. Shells thus prepared were common in the James Ramey Mound at various depths and also in other mounds.

*Campeloma subsolidum* (Anthony) Large river snail. This shell, which in life has a beautiful green epidermis, was also esteemed by the Mound Builders and used as beads in the same manner as *Anculosa* described above. These shells occurred in the mounds and in the village site material.

*Campeloma ponderosum* (Say.) Heavy river snail. Rare. Two specimens were found in the James Ramey Mound.

*Pleurocera acuta* (Raf.) A few specimens of these slender river snails were found in the James Ramey Mound. Their practical use is not indicated by marks on the shells.

Near the bottom (twenty-one feet deep) of the James Ramey Mound, as well as in other mounds, a number of fresh water shells were found which evidently were not used by the aborigines for ornamentation or domestic use but were included when the mound was built. If the material from which the mounds were built was in part taken from the border or bottom of ponds which were dry in summer but contained water in the winter and spring, such mollusks as here indicated would be included. They occur abundantly in such locations in all parts of Illinois. It is possible also that this depth (twenty-one feet) marked the base of the mound and these shells may have lived in a swale on the original site of the mound. Three species were found, as follows: *Physa gyrina* (Say.), *Planorbis trivolvis* (Say.), *Lymnaea reflexa* (Say.). One specimen of *Planorbis trivolvis* was found in the upper eight feet of the mound. This must have been contained in the material used in erecting the mound.

Professor M. M. Leighton collected several shells from other mounds during his geological examination of this region. These are noted below. *Planorbis trivolvis* (Say.), *Segmentina armi-*

*gera* (Say.), *Lymnæa palustris* (Müll.) (fresh water shells): *Helicodiscus parallelus* (Say.), land shell. From Sam Chiu-callos's Mound, on outskirts of East St. Louis, Illinois. These probably were included in building material.

*Physa gyrina* (Say.), *Vivipara contectoides* (W.G.B.), *Anodonta grandis* (Say.) Fresh water snails and paper shell clam from the Kunnemann Mound. These probably were included in building material.

Nineteen species of fresh water shells are listed above as occurring in the mounds and as being used by the Indians for some purpose. Seven additional species probably were included in building material. The first mentioned species doubtless were used largely as food, for the ancient aboriginee, like his more modern descendant, probably esteemed this bivalve as a valuable part of his menu. The curious and brightly colored shells of the clams and the form of the snails doubtless attracted his attention and suggested ways in which they could be used for practical use as well as for bodily ornamentation. The shell gorgets and effigies also indicate that the large flat surface of some of the mussels created an art impulse which is reflected in these curious objects.

#### MARINE MOLLUSCA

That the Mound Builders and other aboriginal inhabitants of America were traders is evidenced by the presence of many marine shells which evidently came from the west coast of Florida or from the Gulf coast of the southern states. That certain of these mollusks were highly esteemed is shown by the number of fragments and finished objects made from at least one of these marine snails. It is probable that the canoes of the more southern tribes ascended the Mississippi River and barter was carried on between them and the Cahokia Indians.

*Busycon perversa* (Linn.) Marine conch. This mollusk, so common on the Gulf and Atlantic coasts of the United States, is the most abundant snail in the Cahokia Mounds. Hundreds of specimens of the heavy axis occurred in the James Ramey Mound from top to bottom. This part evidently was used to make a drill, and it may also have been used for ornamental purposes. Beads, nose and ear ornaments, and gorgets were

made from parts of this shell. A dipper made from the body whorl of this species was found in burial Mounds 19, 20, 21. A gorget made from the side of the body whorl was found in the Sawmill Mound with skeleton No. 10.

*Busycon carica* (Gmelin) Marine conch. Two specimens of this species were found in the James Ramey Mound.

*Busycon pyrum* (Dillwyn) Marine conch. One specimen of this small conch was found in the James Ramey Mound.

*Strombus pugilis alatus* (Gmelin) Stromb conch. One perfect specimen and a fragment of this species were found in the James Ramey Mound. Used as nose or ear ornament.

*Fasciolaria gigantea* (Kiener) A portion of the axis of this largest of American marine snails was found in the James Ramey Mound.

*Fasciolaria distans* (Lamarck) A single specimen of this Banded Snail occurred in the James Ramey Mound. Its probable use was not indicated.

*Oliva litterata* (Lamarck) Olive shell. The spire of this specimen had been removed and it might have been used as a bead or as a pendant from a string of beads. From the James Ramey Mound.

*Littorina irrorata* (Say.) Periwinkle. A single perfect specimen was found in the James Ramey Mound. Its use was not indicated.

*Rangia cuneata* (Gray) Marine clam. Left valve of a medium sized specimen found at a depth of twelve feet in James Ramey Mound. Also found with surface material.

*Marginella apicina* (Menke) This small marine snail occurred in abundance, especially in the James Ramey Mound. This species was used largely for the purpose of making beads, the side of the shell being ground down to the natural cavity, as in the case of the fresh water shells *Anculosa* and *Campelema*. The number of specimens found indicates that this shell was a favorite for this purpose. A singular fact, though perhaps without significance, is that these shells were found only in the James Ramey Mound, none occurring in any of the burial mounds thus far examined. In the mound mentioned they were found at several levels between one and twelve feet below the summit, and from twenty feet deep to the base of the mound, twenty-three feet below the summit.

Ten species of marine shells have been found in these mounds, all but one being gastropods. Three of these species were used definitely for ornamentation, either as beads, nose ornaments, or gorgets. It is possible that these other species will be found to have been used for the same purposes when other mounds are examined.

#### COMPARISON WITH HOPEWELL MOUNDS OF OHIO

It is of interest to compare the mollusks found in the Cahokia group with those preserved in the Hopewell group of mounds in Ohio (Moorehead, Publication 211, Field Museum of Natural History, 1922). An examination of the collection on exhibition in the Field Museum shows that apparently only four species are common to both mound groups, *Busycon perversa*, *Fasciolaria gigantea*, *Cyclonaias tuberculata* and *Amblema costata*, the last two fresh water mussels.

Two large and characteristic species of Mollusca occur in the Hopewell group that are absent from the Cahokia group, *Cassis madagascariensis*, and *Cypraea exanthema*. This may indicate a different trade route, perhaps with different tribes, because these shells would appeal to the aboriginal mind on account of their size and striking appearance as well as attractive colors, and would have been sought eagerly by the Cahokia people. These shells are found on both sides of the Floridan peninsula, their distribution including the east coast of Texas. The finest specimens, however, occur in southern Florida and in the West Indies.

The Hopewell people used these large shells (some of which are larger than any recent specimens the author has seen) for dippers and perhaps for drinking vessels. The interior whorls are usually removed, leaving only the large outer or body whorl. *Busycon perversa* is also of large size and seems to have been used as a dipper. Of these large shells, several were found with skeletons. The following were noted:

*Cassis madagascariensis* with skeleton 241 in Mound 8; skeleton 192, in Mound 4; as ear ornaments eight inches long with skeleton 281 in Mound 25. *Cypraea exanthema* with skeleton 191 in Mound 4. *Amblema costata* with skeleton 173 in Mound 20. A fragment of *Cyclonaias tuberculata* was observed with other mussel fragments.



It is noteworthy that in mounds in Calhoun County, Illinois, the large *Cassis madagascariensis* occurs and is the same form as found in the Hopewell Mounds. This might indicate a different route of barter from that of the Cahokia group, possibly overland from Indiana and Ohio. That this large shell should be absent from the Cahokia Mounds is significant. Beads of *Anculosa praerosa* are more abundant in the Calhoun County mounds than in the Cahokia group.

The builders of the Hopewell Mounds used shell beads, made of both marine and fresh water shells, to a marked degree, thousands of these being in the collection. Baroque pearls were also in demand, judging by the number of these in the collection which had been made into beads. It is probable that valuable free pearls were used also. None of these have as yet been found in the Cahokia Mounds.

It would be of interest to both malacologists and ethnologists if the shells found in various tumuli left by aboriginal people could be listed accurately and the uses of the shells indicated. The present paper is a contribution toward that end. All of the material listed from the Cahokia Mounds is in the Museum of Natural History of the University of Illinois.

#### FRESH WATER MUSSELS FROM MOUND NO. 5

The kitchen midden material found in Mound No. 5 of the Havana is of great interest, indicating that the people who built the mound used large quantities of these mussels for both food, and raw material for implements or ornaments. So great is the extent of this material that without a geological examination serious doubt would be entertained as to its artificial intrusion. A careful examination by Dr. H. R. Wanless, for the Illinois State Geological Survey, proved conclusively that it was deposited by the aborigines and was in no sense a natural deposit of Pleistocene age. Eleven species are represented, of which the first three are common to abundant. It will be noted that all are of the sold shell forms. All species now live in the Illinois River near by and the mound material does not differ from the species as now living in the river. The common and scientific names of the species represented are listed below:

*Elliptio dilatatus* (Rafinesque), Lady finger; spike.

*Elliptio crassidens* (Lamarck), Elephant's ear.

- Amblema rariplicata (Lamarck), Blue point.  
Quadrula pustulosa (Lea), Pimple-back.  
Tritogonia tuberculata (Rafinesque), Buckhorn.  
Cyclonaias tuberculata (Raf.), Purple warty-back.  
Plethobasus cyphus (Raf.), Bullhead.  
Plagiola lineolata (Raf.), Butterfly.  
Pleurobema solida (Lea), Small niggerhead.  
Lampsilis fallaciosa (Smith-Simpson), Slough sand shell.  
Lampsilis ventricosa (Barnes), Pocketbook.

APPENDIX B  
SOME RESEARCHES IN THE ILLINOIS RIVER  
VALLEY NEAR HAVANA

It was thought advisable to study the relationship—if any—between the Cahokia people and those of the Illinois River Valley to the northward. McAdams and other observers had found many objects such as effigy pipes, copper hatchets, and pottery vessels in various tumuli between the mouth of the river at Alton and Peoria, yet there had been no complete published report. Furthermore, the remarkable discoveries made by Dr. Don Dickson in a burial place, near Lewistown, prompted us to visit the region.

We located on the farm of Mrs. Anna Neteler, near Havana, and are much indebted to the kindness of this lady and her family for permitting exploration.

The mounds of the region are described in the accompanying report written by Mr. Taylor. It is well to remark that one structure, which has aroused considerable speculation, is known by local persons as the "Man Mound," or the "Bird Mound." It has been somewhat damaged by the elements, or possibly by excavations. Mr. Taylor's presentation of local traditions is an illustration of how old residents differ in their views and opinions with reference to the same subject. Mr. Taylor's observations follow.

THE HAVANA TUMULI

Survey of October to December 5, 1927

By JAY L. B. TAYLOR, *Engineer*

*Magnetic Variations:* In all instances where compass readings are referred to, a declination of  $5^{\circ} 15'$  east, has been adopted, unless otherwise indicated.

Mr. Chris Kreiling, County Engineer of Mason County, Illinois, states that practically all of his surveys in this locality are based on such a variation, and because of limited operations carried on in Fulton County, lying immediately across the Illinois River, the same variation was adopted in locating Mounds Nos. 1, 2, and 3 of the Liverpool group. Topographical notes have been computed downward from the bench marks (B M) established on respective summits. Various horizontal scales have been adopted but in all cases the unit of measure is five or a multiple of five. Vertical scales also vary to suit conditions, but the unit is either one or two. Such scales will be shown clearly in final map.

*Mound No. 1.* This is located immediately on the left bank of the same bayou and the western extremity may have been slightly cut away by river action. Its B M lies north  $68^{\circ}$  west, 160.0 feet from B M, Mound No. 2, and 58.0 feet from and 22.4 feet above water line (October 18, 1927). Opened.

*Mound No. 2.* This is referred to in the field notes as the "Bird Mound," and as shown by the survey is in the form of what may be designated as a flying bird. B M lies 2043.0 feet west and 305.0 feet north of the southeast corner of Section 11, Township 21 north, Range 9 west, third P. M. in Mason County, Illinois. It is also south  $68^{\circ}$  east, 216.0 feet (through B M Mound No. 1), from and 25.4 feet above water level at the left bank of a bayou of the Illinois River (October 18, 1927).

*Mound No. 3.* Height, 1.5 feet; diameter 60.0 feet; ovate; opened. Center lies 2326.0 feet west and 116.0 feet north of the southeast corner of Section 11, supra.

*Mound No. 4.* Height, 1.5 feet; diameter 30.0 feet; circular; B M lies 2320.0 feet west and 35.0 feet north of southeast corner Section 11, supra. Opened.

*Mound No. 5.* B M lies south  $66^{\circ}$  east, 422.0 feet from the southeast corner of Riverside Park (NE $\frac{1}{4}$  SE $\frac{1}{4}$  Sec. 11, supra). Opened.

*Mound No. 6.* B M lies 198.0 feet east of and 29.3 feet above water line at left bank of Illinois River (November 11, 1927) and bears south  $82^{\circ}$  west, 213.0 feet from the southeast corner of Riverside Park, supra. Opened.

*Mound No. 7.* B M lies 210.0 feet from and 42.3 feet above water line at the left bank of the Illinois River (November 2, 1927) and bears south  $52^{\circ} 30'$  west, 450.0 feet from the southeast corner of Riverside Park, supra. Tested with augers and two pits.

*Mound No. 8.* Height, 4.0 feet; diameter, 100.0 feet; circular; not opened. B M bears south  $23^{\circ}$  east, 310.0 feet from southeast corner of Riverside Park, supra.

*Mound No. 9.* Station 14 (B M) bears north  $19^{\circ}$  west, 187.0 feet from southeast corner of Riverside Park, supra. Tested with augers. B M lies in the major axis 220.0 feet from and 52.9 feet above water line at the left bank of the Illinois River (November 8, 1927). Recent excavation (apparently for a building) appears at the western extremity and here, also, river action may have cut away a portion of the mound.

*Mound No. 10.* Height, 2.0 feet; major diameter 100.0 feet; minor diameter, 60.0 feet; B M lies 1640.0 feet west and 265.0 feet north of the southeast corner of Section 11, supra. Tested with augers but not opened.

*Mound No. 11.* This lies in Chautauqua Park, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  miles north of Havana, Illinois. Station 21, which lies north  $44^{\circ}$  east, 50.0 feet from B M, at the extremity of Line No. 2, bears south  $28^{\circ} 20'$  east, 184.0 feet from the northwest corner of Section 31, Township 22 north, Range 8 west, third P. M., Mason County, Illinois.

*Mound No. 12.* Height estimated at 6.0 feet and diameter at 75.0 feet; circular. An angle of  $42^{\circ} 40'$  left, from a line to Station 21, Line 2, Mound No. 11, shows B M 270.0 feet distant from Station 21, supra. Not opened.

*Mound No. 13.* Height estimated at 7.0 feet and diameter at 120.0 feet. An angle of  $76^{\circ} 20'$ , left, from line from center of Mound No. 12 to Station 21, Line 2, Mound No. 11, shows iron flagpole at center of No. 13, 131.0 feet distant and across the road from center of Mound No. 12. Not opened.

### THE LIVERPOOL GROUP

Consultation with the county authorities at Lewistown, Illinois, seemed to indicate that these mounds lay in the southeast quarter of the southwest quarter, Section 21, Township 5 north, Range 4 east, fourth P. M., Fulton County, Illinois, and notes were compiled accordingly. Later, however, an examination of the sheet covering the Havana Quadrangle, State Geological Survey, Edition of 1925, led to the conclusion that they are located a short distance southwest of the center of this same section, 21, hence a note has been added to the field records calling attention to this uncertainty of location.

*Mound No. 1.* This mound is 3.0 feet high and 80.0 feet in diameter, and lies 65.0 feet west and 100.0 feet north of what is assumed to be the common quarter-corner of Sections 21 and 28, Township 5 north, Range 4 east, fourth P. M. in Fulton County, Illinois. Attention was first directed to it on November 6, 1927, by Mr. Charles Harris, a local collector. Mr. Harris had started to open it the day before but had sunk a pit only a few inches when he encountered numerous slabs of stone. He assumed that these indicated the presence of a stone tomb, and not being familiar with the means usually employed in removing such remains immediately suspended operations and asked that the mound be examined by the University Field Crew. This crew began work on November 7, and soon uncovered an irregularly circular arrangement of what appeared to be sand stone slabs, varying in size from 6" x 8" to 12" x 18" and in thickness from 2" to 4". This circle was uncovered at a depth of about 12", and was broken at the northeast side by about a 3' 6" gap in which slight traces of charcoal and ash appeared in black gumbo earth. A trench cut down to a depth of from 2' to 3' and extending entirely around the outer circumference of the circle showed a yellow clay formation, barren of archæological material and apparently constituting the original and undisturbed basal structure. The same formation appeared at about the same depth within the circle, but lay in the form of a low rounded ridge running from southwest to northeast through the mound. Only one layer of slabs, very irregularly placed, was found, and there were no indications whatever that a wall had ever been laid up. Aside from the fragments of charcoal mentioned, the only evidence of human occupancy of the mound was the head of a femur, recently cut through as if with a shovel or spade, and found directly on the surface of the dirt thrown back into his pit of the day before, presumably by Mr. Harris. There has been no opportunity to ascertain whether he carried it there with him and either intentionally or accidentally left it there, or whether he found it in the mound.

Similar slabs of sandstone appear in numbers just across the road east and southeast of this mound in Mr. Whitnah's field, but these appear to have been carried there by man and are not in the nature of original out-

cropping. An extensive outcrop of the same material does appear however, on the left bank of Sister Creek, less than one-fourth mile to the west, at the junction of the Sister Creek and Lewistown-Liverpool roads, and possibly these slabs originally came from there. No time was available for tracing the formation further.

Inquiries among local residents indicate that the slabs found in Mound No. 1 may have been carried there several years ago as foundation material for a small building, but no remains of such a structure were found.

*Mound No. 2.* This is 3 feet high and 80 feet in diameter and lies 50 feet north of the Lewistown-Liverpool road and 130 feet west of No. 1. It was tested with augers and several fragments of sandstone were found but no archaeological remains appeared. Basal formation was apparently the same as that of Mound No. 1.

*Mound No. 3.* Lies 100 feet north of the Lewistown-Liverpool road and 435 feet west of Mound No. 2. Its height was estimated at 2 feet and its diameter at 60.0 feet. No tests were made.

#### OTHER MOUNDS

About 200 yards north of Mounds 1, 2, and 3, is a long high ridge upon the point of which another mound-like formation appears. Eastward from this so-called mound, slightly river-ward from the summit of the ridge, evidences of old testholes remain and about these pits numerous human and animal bones, sherds, shells, et cetera, appear. It seems reasonable, to judge from such remains, that here may be an extensive burial ground, probably of modern Indians. Mrs. Grigsby, present owner of this land, has agreed to let the ridge be examined provided proper care be taken to leave the ground in such condition that it will not wash.

About 200.0 feet northeast of Mound No. 1, across the Lewistown-Liverpool road, lies a rather extensive mound upon which the Whitnah residence stands. Mrs. Grigsby, former owner of this property, and personally acquainted with operations there for the past fifty years, states that when the basement for this building was dug no archaeological material whatever was found. No examination of this basement as to depth or of the mound as to height was made, but it is doubtful if the floor of the basement is as low as the base of the mound.

Further northeast, beyond the residence, lies another extensive mound upon which a barn stands. This mound is not as high but has a much greater diameter than the other. The Whitnah property is occupied by a tenant, and it was not practicable to hunt up and interview the owner as to permission to test.

#### EXAMINATION OF MOUNDS

##### (1) HAVANA GROUP

*Mound. No. 1.* Extensive trenching and cross-trenching through this mound, which lies a short distance from the main body of the Illinois River on the left bank of a slough (possibly an old channel) revealed merely a pile of sand bearing numerous small sherds, fragments of shell,

a few small pieces of broken stone (probably creek gravel) and one flint  
The trench through the minor axis was

was found by the field crew.

*Mound No. 4.* A low circular mound on the left bank of this bayou.  
This was trenched but yielded only broken gravel, shell fragments and

cropping. An extensive outcrop of the same material does appear however, on the left bank of Sister Creek, less than one-fourth mile to the west, at the junction of the Sister Creek and Lewistown-Liverpool roads, and possibly these slabs originally came from there. No time was available for tracing the formation further.

Inquiries among local residents indicate that the slabs found in Mound No. 1 may have been carried there several years ago as foundation material for a small building, but no remains of such a structure were found.

*Mound No. 2.* This is 3 feet high and 80 feet in diameter and lies 50 feet north of the Lewistown-Liverpool road and 130 feet west of No. 1. It was tested with augers and several fragments of sandstone were found but no archæological remains appeared. Basal formation was apparently the same as that of Mound No. 1.

*Mound No. 3.* Lies 100 feet north of the Lewistown-Liverpool road and 435 feet west of Mound No. 2. Its height was estimated at 2 feet and its diameter at 60.0 feet. No tests were made.

#### OTHER MOUNDS

About 200 yards north of Mounds 1, 2, and 3, is a long high ridge upon the point of which another mound-like formation appears. Eastward from this so-called mound, slightly river-ward from the summit of the ridge, evidences of old testholes remain and about these pits numerous human and animal bones, sherds, shells, et cetera, appear. It seems reasonable, to judge from such remains, that here may be an extensive burial ground, probably of modern Indians. Mrs. Grigsby, present owner of this land, has agreed to let the ridge be examined provided proper care be taken to leave the ground in such condition that it will not wash.

About 200.0 feet northeast of Mound No. 1, across the Lewistown-Liverpool road, lies a rather extensive mound upon which the Whitnah residence stands. Mrs. Grigsby, former owner of this property, and personally acquainted with operations there for the past fifty years, states that when the basement for this building was dug no archæological material whatever was found. No examination of this basement as to depth or of the mound as to height was made, but it is doubtful if the floor of the basement is as low as the base of the mound.

Further northeast, beyond the residence, lies another extensive mound upon which a barn stands. This mound is not as high but has a much greater diameter than the other. The Whitnah property is occupied by a tenant, and it was not practicable to hunt up and interview the owner as to permission to test.

#### EXAMINATION OF MOUNDS

##### (1) HAVANA GROUP

*Mound. No. 1.* Extensive trenching and cross-trenching through this mound, which lies a short distance from the main body of the Illinois River on the left bank of a slough (possibly an old channel) revealed merely a pile of sand bearing numerous small sherds, fragments of shell,



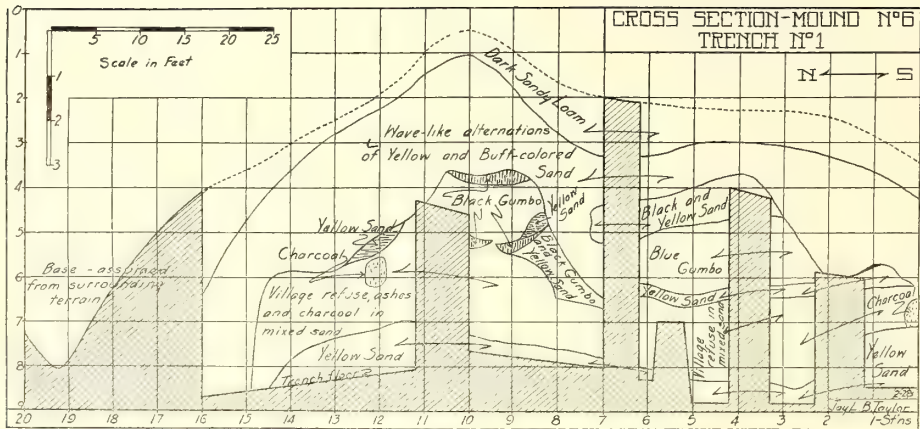


FIGURE 10  
Cross section of Mound No. 1, Havana group, on land of Mrs. Anna Neteler.

cropping. An extensive outcrop of the same material does appear however on the left bank of Sister Creek less than one fourth mile to the

mound, which lies a short distance from the main body of the Illinois River on the left bank of a slough (possibly an old channel) revealed merely a pile of sand bearing numerous small sherds, fragments of shell,

a few small pieces of broken stone (probably creek gravel) and one flint spearhead 5.3" long and 1.7" wide. The trench through the minor axis was extended across the narrow flat and through

*Mound No. 2.* This mound, locally known as the "Man Mound" but referred to in the field notes as the "Bird Mound," lies further back and was thoroughly trenched and examined for human remains. Nothing of this nature was unearthed however, although a few sherds, spalls, and broken gravel were found. Sherds appeared at from 12" below the surface of the mound to hardpan which was found at from 3.0 feet to 4.0 feet, and in Section S-7 two small fragments of pottery were found 2" below the surface of the hardpan. The latter, curiously enough, appears at a practically uniform depth below the mound's surface except at the north side and near the edge next to the river where it disappears completely, which leads to speculation as to whether it originated during or after construction of the mound or whether it originally existed as it now appears and was covered with mound material. Examination by Dr. Wanless, of the University of Illinois, failed to solve this problem.

An old resident of Havana, whose identity could not be determined, told a member of the field crew that within his memory this mound was ovate in plan but that one Diffenbacher, operating some fifty years ago, and trenching into the mound from either side, failed to fill up his trenches, with the result that the dumps he left formed the ridges that are now supposed to represent the wings of the bird. A careful study of the underlying hardpan, as shown by cross-sections measured to tenths of a foot and which will be indicated on the final cross-section map, both as to depth below the surface of the mound and as to thickness, might seem to corroborate such a statement. On the other hand, careful examination of the timber growing on the mound and on the wings, on the extreme tip of either of which now stands a mature hickory (*hickoria ovata*?) undoubtedly more than fifty years old, shows that no dirt has been piled about the roots of any of the trees.

Another local story is that this same Diffenbacher dug into and obliterated a small mound-like structure located where the bird's head might have been shown. Close examination by means of trenches shows no signs of such a structure ever having been here.

A persistent and extremely interesting feature of the remains that were found here was the number of broken gravel appearing at all depths down to but not in the hardpan. Evidently these were originally ellipsoidal in form, from the river, and varied in size from the dimensions of an egg to a third as large as a football. One such broken stone may have been a fragment of an ax. Flint spalls, artifacts, and shells were conspicuous by their absence.

*Mound No. 3.* This is a low, ovate mound overlooking the left bank of the same slough or bayou of the Illinois River, and when trenched through yielded only broken gravel, sherds, and a few fragments of fresh water shells. Local residents state that a few years ago extensive beds of burned shell appeared on and in this mound but no such material was found by the field crew.

*Mound No. 4.* A low circular mound on the left bank of this bayou. This was trenched but yielded only broken gravel, shell fragments and

a few small sherds. It too was examined for beds of burned shell but none was found.

*Mound No. 5.* This mound is located in the Neteler wheatfield about  $\frac{3}{8}$ -mile from the left bank of the Illinois River and was first tested with augers. Fresh water shells appeared at a depth of about 4.0 feet and when the mound was trenched were found in distinct deposits under a black silt-like soil at three different points. Most of them had been opened, and frequently they appeared closely nested together. Charcoal and ash accompanied them. Several unopened shells were shipped to the University Museum at Urbana, but Dr. Wanless states that Curator Baker informed him that no ash was found in these. The dominant structure of No. 5 is of yellow sand showing darker wave-like layers as if laid down by wind action. Basal structure is of unmixed yellow sand.

*Mound No. 6.* This is a low conical mound lying between the two longest and highest mounds of the Havana group, viz: Nos. 7 and 9, thrown up parallel to each other and almost at right angles to the left bank of the Illinois. It proved to be rich in village refuse, which was found from the surface to a depth of about 8.0 feet, at which point yellow sand, barren of archaeological material, appeared as the original basal formation. As in No. 5, the upper portions, particularly in the north slope, showed undulating layers of dark brown sand in lighter yellow sand, suggesting wind formation, but nothing definite in this respect was determined. After trenching had continued for several days, local residents asserted that years ago a considerable portion of the top of this mound had been removed to facilitate building but when they were informed that its present structure showed no evidence of such disturbance, admitted that possibly they were mistaken and that such grading operations might have been confined to nearby grounds.

The first human remains found were uncovered near base and consisted merely of a badly broken human lower jaw which was assumed to be more in the nature of refuse than of a burial, and which was not, therefore, recorded as a burial. Later, in the southwest quarter of the mound, at a depth of about 2.0 feet, portions of sixteen human skeletons were unearthed.

Field notes taken November 19 show: "Skeleton No. 1: extended on back; head southeast in northwest part of Sec. 1-8; right arm, lower legs and feet missing; about twenty poorly preserved shell beads at neck; eight split bear teeth and both sides of a cut and perforated human lower jaw at front of pelvis; torso, humeri and partial cranium of Skeleton No. 2 on shins of No. 1, head to northeast; torso only of No. 3, head northeast, beside No. 2; 15 roughly triangular but nicely chipped flints about 5" x 7" x  $\frac{1}{2}$ " to 1" arranged irregularly in two parallel lines begin in southwest part of Sec. 1-7, pass through southeast corner of Sec. H-7 and end near center of Sec. H-6; 3-inch spearhead under a buffalo shoulder blade, 6.0 feet deep in northeast corner of Sec. 1-8; numerous sherds, bone awls and needles, 2 long flat perforated bone objects, pieces of antler, fresh water shells, and flint spalls.

For November 20: "Head, torso and upper legs of Skeleton No. 5, 2.0 feet deep on bed of 37 flints similar to those found yesterday, with

ten more set vertically beyond head which is to the southwest in west  
 flint, a  
 convex  
 beyond  
 at neck  
 1 chemi-  
 vis.  
 3 south-  
 horizontal  
 head and  
 form to  
 r lay on  
 vertical  
 k fairly

1 of 26  
 e upper  
 ngle of  
 square  
 y wider  
 copper  
 nsider-  
 and 6,  
 ar teeth

et deep

i-8 and

and al-  
 human

ally all  
 esigns;  
 d from

; torso  
 of Sec.  
 legs of  
 so only  
 3. 7, in  
 thwest,  
 c. G-8;  
 iter of  
 t right  
 orso of

what appeared to be an ornament fashioned from an unknown, light-colored material, was found with one skeleton, but the notes on this are

a few small sherds. It too was examined for beds of burned shell but none was found.

*Mound No. 5.* This mound is located in the Neteler wheatfield about  $\frac{1}{8}$ -mile from the left bank of the Illinois River and was first tested with augers. Fresh water shells appeared at a depth of about 4.0 feet and when the mound was trenched were found in distinct deposits under a black silt-like soil at three different points. Most of them had been opened, and frequently they appeared closely nested together. Charcoal and ash accompanied them. Several unopened shells were shipped to the University Museum at Urbana, but Dr. Wanless states that Curator Baker informed him that no ash was found in these. The dominant structure of No. 5 is of yellow sand showing darker wave-like layers as if laid down by wind action. Basal structure is of unmixed yellow sand.

*Mound No. 6.* This is a low conical mound lying between the two longest and highest mounds of the Havana group, viz: Nos. 7 and 9, thrown up parallel to each other and almost at right angles to the left bank of the Illinois. It proved to be rich in village refuse, which was found from the surface to a depth of about 8.0 feet, at which point yellow sand, barren of archæological material, appeared as the original basal formation. As in No. 5, the upper portions, particularly in the north slope, showed undulating layers of dark brown sand in lighter yellow sand, suggesting wind formation, but nothing definite in this respect was determined. After trenching had continued for several days, local residents asserted that years ago a considerable portion of the top of this mound had been removed to facilitate building but when they were informed that its present structure showed no evidence of such disturbance, admitted that possibly they were mistaken and that such grading operations might have been confined to nearby grounds.

The first human remains found were uncovered near base and consisted merely of a badly broken human lower jaw which was assumed to be more in the nature of refuse than of a burial, and which was not, therefore, recorded as a burial. Later, in the southwest quarter of the mound, at a depth of about 2.0 feet, portions of sixteen human skeletons were unearthed.

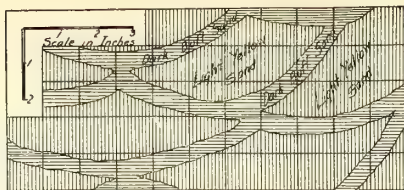
Field notes taken November 19 show: "Skeleton No. 1: extended on back; head southeast in northwest part of Sec. 1-8; right arm, lower legs and feet missing; about twenty poorly preserved shell beads at neck; eight split bear teeth and both sides of a cut and perforated human lower jaw at front of pelvis; torso, humeri and partial cranium of Skeleton No. 2 on shins of No. 1, head to northeast; torso only of No. 3, head northeast, beside No. 2; 15 roughly triangular but nicely chipped flints about 5" x 7" x  $\frac{1}{2}$ " to 1" arranged irregularly in two parallel lines begin in southwest part of Sec. 1-7, pass through southeast corner of Sec. H-7 and end near center of Sec. H-6; 3-inch spearhead under a buffalo shoulder blade, 6.0 feet deep in northeast corner of Sec. 1-8; numerous sherds, bone awls and needles, 2 long flat perforated bone objects, pieces of antler, fresh water shells, and flint spalls.

For November 20: "Head, torso and upper legs of Skeleton No. 5, 2.0 feet deep on bed of 37 flints similar to those found yesterday, with

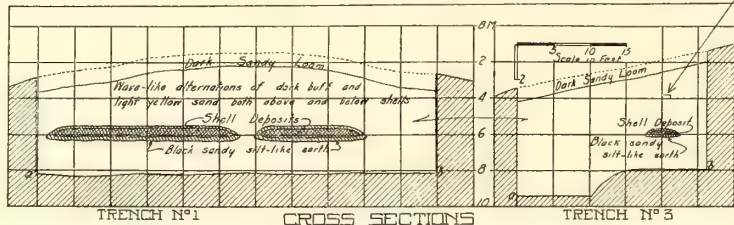
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY  
OF  
MOUND N<sup>o</sup> 5  
NETELER FARM  
MASON COUNTY, ILL.  
FOR  
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS

HAVANA GROUP

Jay L. D. Taylor  
1908



TYPICAL STRATIFORM DEPOSIT — TRENCH N<sup>o</sup> 5



TRENCH N<sup>o</sup> 1

CROSS SECTIONS

TRENCH N<sup>o</sup> 3

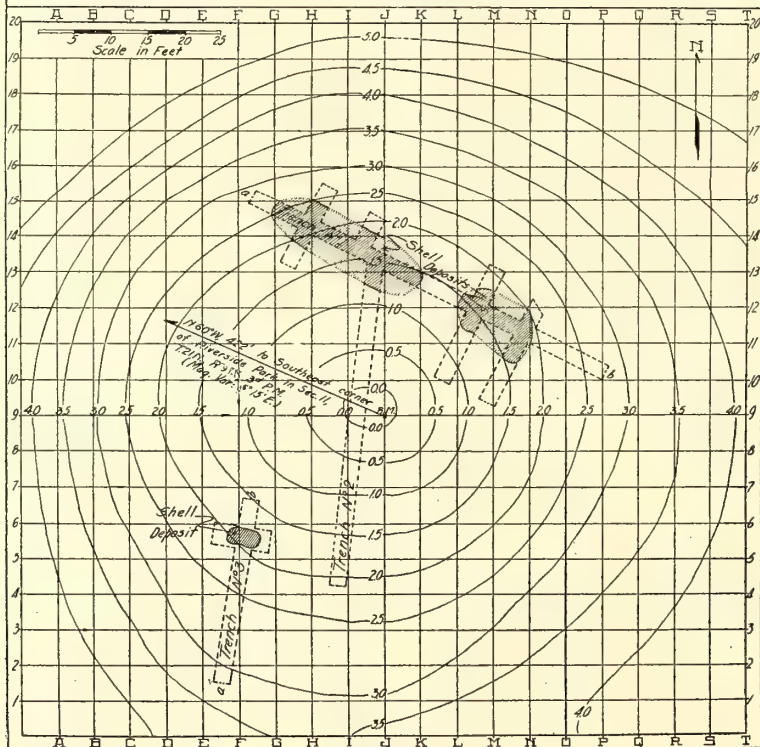


FIGURE 20

Ground plan and cross section of Mound No. 5, Mrs. Anna Neteler's farm, Havana, Illinois.

a few small sherds. It too was examined for beds of burned shell but none was found.

*Mound No.*

$\frac{1}{8}$ -mile from  
with augers.  
and when th  
under a blac  
had been ope  
Charcoal and  
shipped to th  
that Curator  
dominant stru  
layers as if l  
yellow sand.

*Mound No.*

est and highe  
up parallel to  
the Illinois. I  
the surface t  
barren of arc  
tion. As in  
showed undu  
suggesting w  
terminated. Af  
asserted that  
had been ren  
that its prese  
mitted that j  
ations might

The first l  
sisted merely  
to be more ir  
therefore, re  
mound, at a  
were unearth

Field notes  
back; head s  
legs and feet  
eight split b  
lower jaw at  
ton No. 2 on  
northeast, be  
about 5" x 7"  
in southwest  
and end nea  
shoulder bla  
sherds, bone  
of antler, fresh water shells, and flint spalls.

For November 20: "Head, torso and upper legs of Skeleton No. 5, 2.0 feet deep on bed of 37 flints similar to those found yesterday, with



ten more set vertically beyond head which is to the southwest in west part of Sec. H-7; between top of skull and vertically placed flint, a copper implement 6" long, flat sides, square edges and poll, double-convex single bit badly battered and at left side of head; crushed pot beyond vertical flints; bear teeth and shell beads at neck and waist, those at neck well preserved, but of greenish color originating probably through chemical action on copper; cut and dressed animal jaws at front of pelvis.

"Skeleton No. 6: head and torso only; 2.0 feet deep; head to southeast in corner of Sec. G-7; parallel with No. 5; on bed of 27 horizontal flints with 3 other flints set vertically beyond head; between head and vertical flints, one 8" and one 9" copper instrument, similar in form to that in No. 5 but with bits of both to right of head; the shorter lay on its side, with the longer on edge beside it; 3 crushed pots beyond vertical flints; shell beads and bear teeth at neck and waist; those at neck fairly well preserved but of greenish color.

"Skeleton No. 8: head and torso only; 2.0 feet deep; on bed of 26 flints; lower portions of torso somewhat nearer No. 6 than are the upper portions; 3 flints inclined upward and away from head at angle of about 45°; 3 small flat copper implements, each with flat sides, square edges and poll, double bevelled or double-convex single bit slightly wider than poll, 1 small hammer stone, 1 medium size spearhead, 1 copper band, and a crushed pot in the southwest corner of Sec. H-6 at considerably greater distance from head than was apparent in Nos. 5 and 6, may or may not have been significantly related to this burial; bear teeth and shell beads at neck and waist.

"Skeleton No. 4: partial cranium and a few teeth only; 4.0 feet deep near center of Sec. I-8, southeast of head of No. 1.

"Skeleton No. 9: partial cranium south of center of Sec. G-8 and northeast of No. 10.

"Skeleton No. 7; on bed of 16 flints; 2.0 feet deep; at feet of and almost at right angle to Nos. 5, 6, and 8; flint superimposed on human bones.

"Total of 134 flints to date; bear teeth estimated at 200, practically all split, a few ornamented with grooves and pits in geometrical designs; probably 100 shell beads ranging from  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{3}{4}$ " in diameter and from  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to 1" in length."

For November 21: Uncovered Skeleton No. 10; partial cranium; torso and arms missing; extended on back; head southeast in corner of Sec. H-8; femora only of Skeleton No. 11, head southwest, across legs of No. 10, in northwest corner of Sec. H-8; femora and lower torso only of No. 12, head southeast beneath edge of bed of flints under No. 7, in northeast corner of Sec. F-7; femora only of No. 13, head northwest, below edge of bed of flints under No. 7, in southwest corner of Sec. G-8; No. 14, torso, cranium and arms only, face downward, near center of Sec. F-8, 1.8 feet deep; No. 15, skull cap only, 1.8 feet deep, at right side of skull, No. 14; No. 16, femora only, heads south, over torso of No. 14 in southwest corner of Sec. F-8.

What appeared to be an ornament fashioned from an unknown, light-colored material, was found with one skeleton, but the notes on this are

not complete. It was so labelled for shipment, however, that its location can be established.

On first examination, which was rather hurried and attended by more or less confusion created by an excited crowd of onlookers, skeletons No. 5, No. 6, No. 7, No. 8, No. 12, and No. 13, were recorded as of children but subsequent investigation of the teeth and femora of these skeletons leave some doubt as to the correctness of this classification. This uncertainty will be cleared up by examination at the museum.

All remains were platted in place and final maps will show relative positions of burials.

All bones were in a poor state of preservation, and the skulls were too badly crushed to permit accurate measurements.

Partial skeletons and superimposed burials were noticeably the rule rather than the exception, the significance of which needs no comment here.

Of eight earthen-ware pots recovered, only one was found unbroken. This was unaccompanied by a burial and was full of what appeared to be the same material as the sandy earth that surrounded it. This was not removed from the vessel but was shipped with it.

A particularly interesting discovery was that of a complete but crushed vessel,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " high and  $1\frac{3}{4}$ " in diameter, 8.0 feet deep and unaccompanied by any other remains.

Each of the five beds of flint was so platted as to show the actual position of individual flints, which will make possible accurate restoration of these beds in the museum cases if this is desirable.

These remains appeared in an area that comprised only 16 of the 400 five-foot square sections into which the mound was divided, but local conditions seemed to justify suspension of further operations and closure of trenches and pits already opened although there was good reason to believe that the mound contained much more material similar to that removed. Owing to certain complications that arose after these discoveries were made, however, further exploration of Mound No. 6 is not recommended.

*Mound No. 7.* This is the second largest mound of the Havana group thus far examined, is ovate in plan, located directly on the left bank of the Illinois River, and lies with the major axis almost at right angles to the river's course. The field notes show that it was tested extensively with augers and yielded numbers of shells, a few sherds, an occasional flint spall and, in one instance, a few human teeth. A pit sunk to a depth of 11.0 feet or 12.0 feet where these teeth were found, revealed no other remains. Another pit was put down at the summit, on the major axis, some 20.0 feet to the east of B M. Careful measurements of cross-sections were taken and will be shown on the final map. Very fine, light, gray sand, too dry and loose to be removed with augers, was encountered immediately east and southeast of B M. This appeared at 18.0 feet, extended to well below base, and might be well worth further examination. It lies at such a depth, however, that its removal will require the use of cribbing and a bucket, at expense not considered justifiable, at the time these tests were made. This variety of sand was not found in any other mound of the Havana group.

M... ..



not complete. It was so labelled for shipment, however, that its location can be established.

On first examination, which was rather hurried and attended by more or less confusion created by an excited crowd of onlookers, skeletons No. 5, No. 6, No. 7, No. 8, No. 12, and No. 13, were recorded as of children but subsequent investigation of the teeth and femora of these skeletons leave some doubt as to the correctness of this classification. This uncertainty will be cleared up by examination at the museum.

All remains were platted in place and final maps will show relative positions of burials.

All bones were in a poor state of preservation, and the skulls were too badly crushed to permit accurate measurements.

Partial skeletons and superimposed burials were noticeably the rule rather than the exception, the significance of which needs no comment here.

Of eight earthen-ware pots recovered, only one was found unbroken. This was unaccompanied by a burial and was full of what appeared to be the same material as the sandy earth that surrounded it. This was not removed from the vessel but was shipped with it.

A particularly interesting discovery was that of a complete but crushed vessel,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " high and  $1\frac{3}{4}$ " in diameter, 8.0 feet deep and unaccompanied by any other remains.

Each of the five beds of flint was so platted as to show the actual position of individual flints, which will make possible accurate restoration of these beds in the museum cases if this is desirable.

These remains appeared in an area that comprised only 16 of the 400 five-foot square sections into which the mound was divided, but local conditions seemed to justify suspension of further operations and closure of trenches and pits already opened although there was good reason to believe that the mound contained much more material similar to that removed. Owing to certain complications that arose after these discoveries were made, however, further exploration of Mound No. 6 is not recommended.

*Mound No. 7.* This is the second largest mound of the Havana group thus far examined, is ovate in plan, located directly on the left bank of the Illinois River, and lies with the major axis almost at right angles to the river's course. The field notes show that it was tested extensively with augers and yielded numbers of shells, a few sherds, an occasional flint spall and, in one instance, a few human teeth. A pit sunk to a depth of 11.0 feet or 12.0 feet where these teeth were found, revealed no other remains. Another pit was put down at the summit, on the major axis, some 20.0 feet to the east of B M. Careful measurements of cross-sections were taken and will be shown on the final map. Very fine, light, gray sand, too dry and loose to be removed with augers, was encountered immediately east and southeast of B M. This appeared at 18.0 feet, extended to well below base, and might be well worth further examination. It lies at such a depth, however, that its removal will require the use of cribbing and a bucket, at expense not considered justifiable, at the time these tests were made. This variety of sand was not found in any other mound of the Havana group.

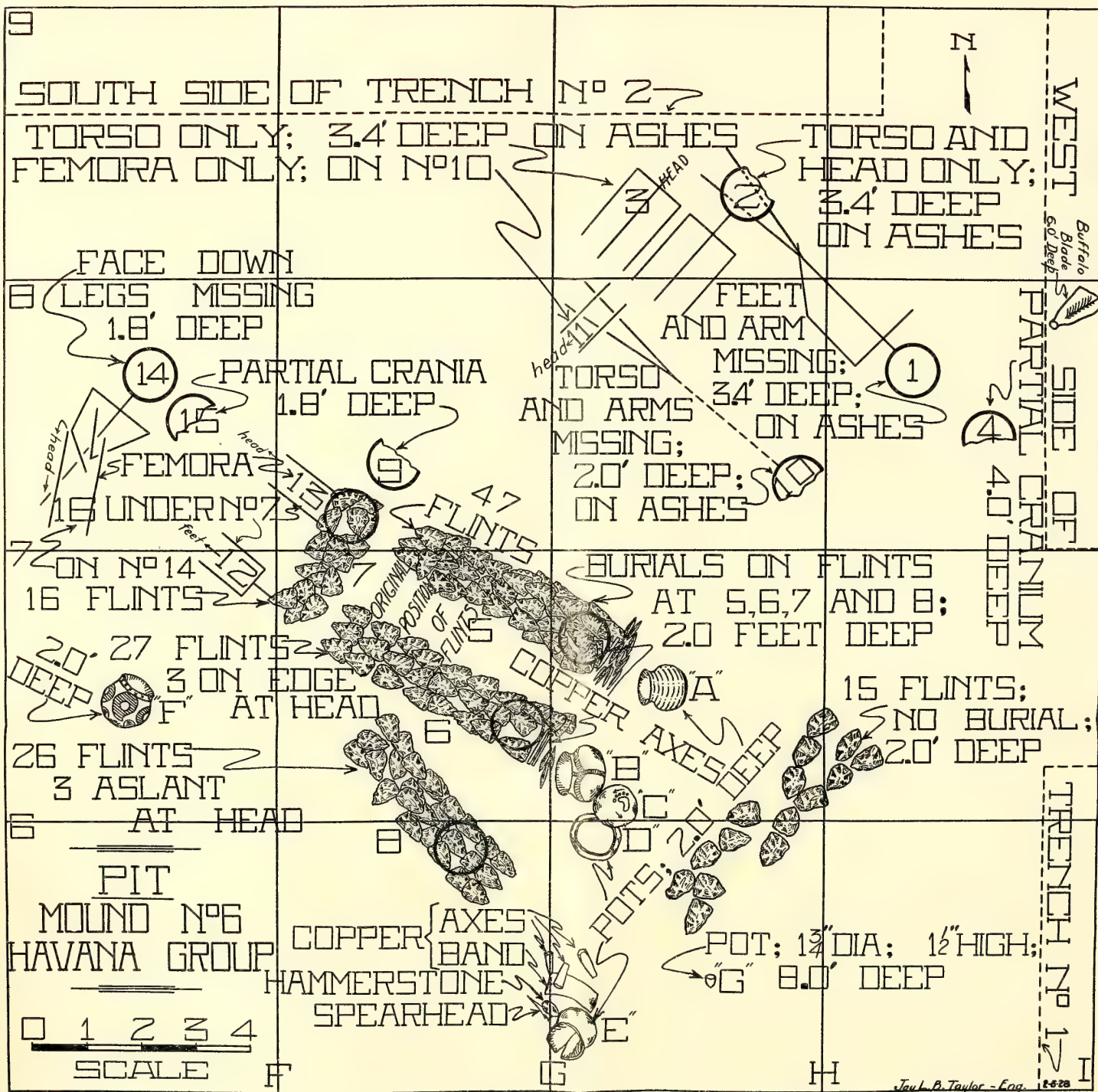


FIGURE 21  
Ground plan of interments and objects in Mound No. 6, Havana group. Land of Mrs. Anna Neteler.

not comp  
can be e

On fir  
or less

No. 5,  
childrer  
skeletor

This ur

All 1  
positio

All t  
badly o

Part  
rather  
here.

Of

This

be th

not r

A  
vesse

by an

E:  
posit

of th

T

five  
con

of  
beli

ren

cov

no

th

th

th

w

fl

o

r

s

s

{

}



CRIBBING  
these tests were made. This variety  
mound of the Havana group.

*Mound No. 8.* This lies a few hundred feet directly east of No. 7, on a high ridge in the Neteler wheatfield, and was neither surveyed nor examined, but was accurately located with respect to the southeast corner of Riverside Park, a common tie-point for Mounds Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 9, and previously described.

*Mound No. 9.* Is the largest mound in the Havana group, is elliptical, lies almost parallel to Mound No. 7, and directly on the left bank of the Illinois River. An excavation in the end next to the river, evidently intended for a building site, destroys the uniformity of profile there but except for a few shell fragments discloses no evidence of prehistoric habitation. Test holes sunk at intervals of ten feet along both axes show a heavy shell content and a greater percent of fine gravel than was found in any other mound. A few small sherds and flint spalls were also taken out. Sherds appear in considerable numbers on the surface along the south base but these may have been turned out by farming operations which have extended well up on the slope. The present owner, Mr. L. A. England, of Havana, Illinois, has issued a written permit for exploration to continue through 1928 but states that he intends to remove the upper 8 feet or 10 feet for filling to be used on low ground to the north. This work, which he expects to begin next spring, should be watched by a competent observer.

*Mound No. 10.* Is a low ovate mound near No. 2, and was tested with augers but yielded nothing. A few very small fragments of pottery were found on its surface, and others appeared on the surface of adjacent territory.

*Mound No. 11.* Located in Chautauqua Park, about 1½ miles north of Havana, and was opened on December 5 by written permission (holding good through 1928) from Mr. O. F. Pfetzing, Chairman of the Grounds Committee of the Chautauqua organization, and yielded eight fragmentary skeletons. The teeth of Skeleton No. 1 were discovered by auger test at a depth of 6.5 feet near Station 10 of Line No. 1 which will be shown on the final map. Other tests showed stone at 7.0 feet under Station 10, Line No. 2; at 6.5 feet under Station 9, and at 6.0 feet under Station 8, same line. Further tests were discontinued and a pit was sunk over Skeleton No. 1. This lay extended on its back, in Sec. K-12, head north, and was complete except for the lower portion of the left arm and a few of the smaller bones. The bones were poorly preserved, lay in very dry, compact, light gray earth resembling hardpan, and were so firmly bonded in this that removal without breakage was impossible. The skull was badly crushed, and the auger had disturbed the jaws and teeth, but nearly all of the latter were eventually recovered. A horizontal layer of eight small slabs of sandstone, irregularly placed, formed a rude semi-circle around the upper part of the skull. Careful examination revealed no shells, teeth or other ornaments, or implements at neck, waist, wrists, or ankles, but a marine shell about a foot long and six inches in diameter lay, opening upward, at the right shoulder. It was full of a slightly darker variety of earth than surrounded the skeleton but this was not disturbed and no attempt was made to ascertain if the columnella had been removed, the shell and contents being shipped intact as found.

In making room for removal of this skeleton, Skeleton No. 2 was found lying at No. 1's right side and parallel to it. The legs were missing. The skull was badly crushed and the right side of the frontal and the right parietal appeared to be fire- or smoke-blackened. Two humeri, apparently from different bodies, lay parallel with each other, diagonally across the torso, with their upper ends to the southeast. The easternmost of these was recorded as Skeleton No. 7, and the other as No. 6. Lying between them, also on the torso of No. 2, was a calcaneum, and this was recorded as Skeleton No. 8. Five small slabs of sandstone lay under the upper edge of the crushed skull.

Operations involved in removing No. 2 disclosed the presence of a child's skeleton, No. 5, to the right of and parallel with No. 2. Frontal portions of the skull were fairly complete but could not be held intact upon removal. The lower right arm lay diagonally across the lower torso, and the legs from the knees down were missing. Three small slabs of sandstone lay beyond the head and with those at the heads of No. 2 and No. 1 formed a rough semi-circle about the three crania. None of these lay completely under the skulls. They varied from 2" to 8" wide or long and were from  $\frac{1}{2}$ " to 1" thick. In the opinion of Dr. Wanless, who examined them, and who states that no such material appears in Mason County, they were probably brought from the outcrops at the mouth of Sister Creek across the river in Fulton County.

A bone implement  $4\frac{1}{2}$ " long, about  $\frac{1}{4}$ " wide, and  $\frac{1}{8}$ " thick, blunt at one end, rounded at the other, and bearing a small hole or eye about an inch from the rounded end, lay at the left side of the skull.

A copper implement,  $4\frac{1}{4}$ " long, 2" wide at one end and 3" at the other, about  $\frac{1}{2}$ " thick, with a concave-convex bit at either end, all heavily encrusted, lay under the right hip. (See Plate XLII.)

Nos. 1, 2, and 5, lay at the same level.

Skeleton No. 3, partial cranium only, appeared at a depth of 3.3' under the foot contour line in the northeast corner of Sec. 1-8, or at practically the same level as Nos. 1, 2, and 5.

Skeleton No. 4, femora only, heads southwest, lay at a slightly higher level near the center of Sec. 1-9, and about 3.0 feet northwest of No. 3. There is no probability that this was a part of No. 3, unless the body was dismembered before burial or disturbed later, and the surrounding earth showed no evidence of such disturbance.

Weather conditions suddenly became so unfavorable during the work of uncovering these remains that canvas had to be stretched over the pit to protect the workmen, and the shadow cast by this and by the walls of the pit, together with extremely cloudy weather, made photography impossible. Careful sketches and measurements of the remains in place were accordingly made and added to the field record, and these will be shown in detail on the final map. Parts of other skeletons were also found and will likewise be shown on the map. There is good reason to believe that the mound contains more similar material, and it is urgently recommended that its exploration be resumed as soon as the weather will permit in 1928.



*Mound No. 12.* This constitutes the second member of a triangular group of three mounds in this Park, is high and narrow in comparison to its base, and seems to be a likely place for exploration.

*Mound No. 13.* This is much flatter in comparison to its greater base than either No. 11 or No. 12 and is not as impressive as either of these but should be examined if operations are resumed in No. 11. Permit from Mr. Pfetzing covering Mounds 11, 12, and 13, holds good through 1928.

*Other Mounds.* Prominent in the Havana group are at least two, and probably three, structures lying in Mr. George Ermerling's alfalfa field on the left bank of the Illinois River at the outskirts of Havana and immediately north of Riverside Park. Lateness of the season prevented examination of these mounds but Mr. Ermerling has agreed to allow exploration next year. What appears to be a series of small mounds, located immediately on the left bank of the Illinois, with perceptibly lower ground back of them, lie along this bank from above Mound No. 2 to the bayou at the north side of Riverside Park.

South and west of Chautauqua Park, along the left bank of the river, in the adjoining section, on property belonging to a Mr. Hahn of Havana, four other mounds stand out quite prominently, and examination of the surrounding grounds revealed the presence of flint spalls and numerous fragments of pottery. When approached in the matter of allowing exploration, Mr. Hahn was non-committal, but there is good reason to believe that his final reply will be favorable. In that event examination of this group may be carried on from the same camp in connection with the work in Nos. 11, 12, and 13.

Some 18 miles below Havana, near Bath, other mounds appear on property owned by Mr. L. H. Kramer who did not hesitate to grant permission to explore. These also lie on the left bank of and near to the river. One, which he says has never been disturbed, may be described as an inverted mound without drainage facilities, and lying near the mouth of a ravine. Sherds appear in numbers on the surface of adjoining fields.

Other mounds lying across the river from Havana are available for exploration through the influence of Dr. Charles M. Atkinson and Mr. P. D. Diffenbacher, both of Havana, and permits may be had to examine many more, so that in event such a course seems justified, probably two years or more can well be spent in the Havana group.

## GENERAL CONCLUSIONS

I can, of course, lay no claims to technical archæological training but it seems to me the remains recovered from Mound No. 6 are of comparatively modern Indians, a conclusion based chiefly on the high grade of workmanship displayed in fashioning the flint discs referred to and on the fact that pottery appeared in such profusion and in such variety and detail of design. Moreover, save for the miniature pot, practically all of the material from this mound was found at a comparatively high level.

This consideration may be affected, however, by the possibility that the crown of the mound may have been removed. Personally, I doubt this story.

On the other hand, the general appearance and location of the remains found in No. 11 lead me to believe that they are much older than those recovered from No. 6, and that they may, therefore, really represent the true Mound Builders. Furthermore, while the copper axes taken from No. 6 had square polls and sides and flat or slightly double convex single bits which, in the heavier ones at least, were badly nicked and battered as from rough usage, the one copper object found in No. 11 had a concave-convex bit at either end and neither of these showed evidences of wear. I assume therefore, that save for the so-called head band in No. 6, the copper objects found there were designed primarily for utilitarian purposes, while the one in No. 11 was probably for ornamental or ceremonial use. So far as I know, it is not common to the Havana group.

The most striking contrast in remains taken from the two mounds, and one that might seem to strengthen the conclusion that those in No. 11 were older than in No. 6, is in the matter of pottery. In No. 6 from the very surface to as deep as we trenched, this appeared in profusion, both as sherds and as whole vessels, and as before mentioned, showed such a wealth of variety and detail in design that it seems to indicate a long period of development. Not the least fragment of pottery was found in No. 11.

The one bone implement found in No. 11, a slender, pointed bone, perforated near the pointed end, might well appear to be a primitive form of needle. Two similarly shaped, though larger, bone objects were taken from No. 6, but in addition to having one perforation well back from the rounded end, both of these bore what appeared to have been a second perforation, through which the wide end of the bone had been broken. These may or may not have been fashioned for use as needles, but if they were so intended, then their complication of design would seem to indicate considerable advance in form over the cruder so-called needle from No. 11.

Great quantities of unworked fresh-water shells but no marine shells appeared in No. 6, but only one shell was found in No. 11 and this was of marine origin. Judging from its location between the shoulders of two skeletons it probably bore some religious or ceremonial relation to one or both of these burials.

Several pieces of worked flint indicating more or less expertness in shaping such material, were taken from No. 6, but not one such piece was found in No. 11.

## APPENDIX C

### THE DICKSON MOUND AND THE LOG TOMB BURIALS AT LIVERPOOL

Upon a ridge flanking the Illinois River, and distant five miles from Lewistown, lies the Dickson Mound. Early settlers discovered the site and removed many skeletons and various objects. We questioned both Dr. Dickson and his father and these observations are condensed from their statements. According to testimony of witnesses, the original was in the form of a crescent approximately six hundred feet or more in length. The surface of this crescent has been considerably altered by the building of a hen house with brick foundation and various other excavations, so that today it appears mound-like, but the crescent feature is absent. Dr. Dickson states that his father, Thomas M. Dickson, bought the property about thirty years ago. When the contour of the crescent was changed through digging for building foundations or grading in order to obtain more even surface, many skeletons were found. It is claimed that nearly one thousand burials have thus far been in evidence.

Mr. Thomas Dickson personally dug out a large number (included in this total) some of which were accompanied by objects similar to those found by his son. The work by Mr. Thomas Dickson was the top of the mound, and it is not known how many feet of the mound have been removed.

Objects obtained by Thomas Dickson, especially the pottery, according to an old photograph appear to be more decorative and of higher art than those found by the son. Also there was a profusion of beads. It is claimed that effigy pottery, pearl beads, and several stone pipes accompanied the top burials.

About the end of March, 1927, Dr. Don F. Dickson began his excavations, finding many skeletons at different depths and various angles, but practically all extended. He worked carefully and brought a number of these into relief by means of proper hand trowel methods and technique. Plates XLVI and XLVII show a portion of the cemetery. He found most of the skeletons placed on a slightly burned base. This would not apply to all, especially those in the lower level. He left a bench around each, and the skeletons stand out clearly and distinctly. As he proceeded downward he found other skeletons at right

angles, or diagonal to upper burials and developed these. No majority of the one hundred eighty bodies are headed in the same direction.

Sixty or seventy feet distant, he found a group burial of six or eight persons and erected a small temporary structure over them for protection.

We have not sufficient exact data to prove that the interments in the upper layers removed by Mr. Dickson senior, represent a different tribe from that indicated by Dr. Don Dickson's finds lower down. Mr. Marion Dickson states that about twelve years ago they found copper ear bobs on each side of several crania and also a bird's-head effigy pipe.

Inspection of the groups in Plates XLVI and XLVII will present readers with prevailing types, or ceramic characteristics. Our conclusion is, naturally, subject to change when Dr. Dickson's complete report is available. Yet so far, the indications are that we have here at his field museum what remains of a large cemetery of the Illinois Indians such as La Salle found at Utica to the north, and which the Iroquois from Onondaga destroyed more than two hundred fifty years ago. A careful study and comparison between the pottery common at Utica and that of Dickson's farm will undoubtedly solve the question.

#### THE "LOG TOMB" MOUNDS AT LIVERPOOL

The mounds at Liverpool were about four and one-half miles northeast, but occupied low land lying very near the river. Originally they were on an island, and differ decidedly from the bluff and high terrace tumuli. Those at Havana lie on a well defined terrace some twenty feet above ordinary water stage.

In the Liverpool group were three mounds. One farthest up the river, some nine hundred or one thousand feet distant from the other two, was said to have been nearly fifteen feet high and seventy-five feet base diameter. Down river from this one, a small house is located on the larger of two mounds which are joined together. The total base line of these is over two hundred fifty feet and the height of the larger mound about twenty-one feet.

Although we carefully interviewed the owners and other interested persons, and particularly a Mr. Solomon, who did the

actual digging, we were unable to secure a satisfactory account of the so-called log tombs and the stone tomb. The objects themselves, having been lent to Dr. Don F. Dickson, were available for study and some of them are shown in Plates XLVIII and XLIX.

It would appear that in the mound up-river Solomon discovered some forty skeletons which were surrounded by what he called a wall composed of small stones. Mr. Marion Dickson visited the site while work was in progress and it is his opinion that these stones were laid in whitish clay which was almost, but not quite, sufficiently hard to be considered cement. We observed some of the stones scattered about the surface and also traces of the clay. The wall was said to be about four feet high. Indians had spread a layer of pure white sand an inch or two in thickness on the base inside. Upon this were laid the bodies accompanied by various objects. The witnesses do not agree as to the size of the tomb, one stating that it was twenty feet long and ten feet wide, another that the tomb was about ten feet in length. Solomon declares that the earth within was very loose, indicating that it was arched over, or roofed with timbers or slabs which have decayed.

In the double mound were larger tombs composed of logs fifteen or sixteen inches in diameter. All witnesses agree that these were laid up to a height of about five feet, but the statements vary as to whether three or four logs were employed for each wall.

In these was a similar layer of white sand on the bottom and long bone daggers, or pointed instruments, shown in Plate XLVIII were stuck in the ground, points downward. About seventy of these were found grouped about the heads of certain burials. One Indian had six at his head, and others three to four.

Although the field data itself is rather unsatisfactory, the objects themselves indicate a modification of Hopewell culture. While the full seventeen Hopewell characteristics are not present, it is safe to assume that some seven or eight of them are in evidence.

Indeed, the artifacts themselves clearly stamp the "Log Tomb" tribe as essentially Hopewell. A significant feature is the absence of pottery—little of which occurs in Ohio Hopewell mounds and none in most of the lower Scioto mound groups.

From all accounts, the logs when uncovered were sufficiently sound to have been parafined, wrapped with twine and removed. Had our force made such a discovery we could have removed the tomb and contents and set it up in the University museum as a permanent exhibit. That a burial of such unusual character and importance was found by ignorant men seems the irony of fate. Up to present writing, December 25, we have been unable to discover an undisturbed log or stone mortuary structure. Diligent search last season as well as this year and our failure in this direction would seem to indicate that the so-called log-tomb people occupied a restricted area in the middle Illinois valley.

There may be several remaining in unexplored mounds of the Liverpool district, or even farther up the river. Due to the commercial spirit now manifest on the part of several land owners, it was not possible for us to secure permits to excavate.

Under other circumstances it might not be advisable to seek legislative aid, but in view of the high importance to science of careful examination of this "Hopewell-like" culture, it would appear proper that some kind of control be established. If there is to be general "digging" on the part of enthusiastic but untrained persons, irreparable damage will result. It would appear to us that while the State of Illinois would not seek to interfere with owners' disposition of ancient remains, yet the Survey suggests that a bill be passed through the Legislature to the effect that all archaeological explorations be under the supervision of either the University of Illinois, The State Museum, the University of Chicago, The Field Museum, Academy of Science or some other competent institution. A trained observer should be sent by one of these institutions to see that the work is properly and intelligently carried out and the usual maps, field notes, photographs and other accurate data obtained.

APPENDIX D  
CAHOKIA BIBLIOGRAPHY

We are indebted to Dr. Thomas English, of Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia, for revision of our bibliography together with additions.

CHARLEVOIX

1761. *Journal of a Voyage to North America*. Vol. II, p. 256. London, 1761.

BRACKENRIDGE, H. M.

1813. "Notes on the Antiquities of the Mississippi Valley." *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society*. Philadelphia, 1813.

1814. *Views of Louisiana; Together with a Journal of a Voyage up the Missouri River, in 1811*. pp. 181-95, 287-91. Pittsburgh, 1814. Second edition, Baltimore, 1817.

1818. "Brief Report on the Cahokia Mounds." *Analectic Magazine*, p. 328. Philadelphia, 1818.

BECK, LEWIS C.

1823. *A Gazetteer of the States of Illinois and Missouri*. Albany, 1823.

LONG, STEPHEN H.

1823. *Account of an Expedition from Pittsburgh to the Rocky Mountains, Performed in the Years 1819, 1820*. By order of the Hon. J. C. Calhoun, Secretary of War, under the command of Maj. S. H. Long, of the U. S. Top. Engineers. Compiled from the notes of Maj. Long, etc., by Edwin James, botanist and geologist to the expedition. Vol. I, Chap. III. Philadelphia (2v.) and London (3v.), 1823.

SCHOOLCRAFT, HENRY R.

1825. *Travels in the Central Portions of the Mississippi Valley: comprising observations on its mineral geography, internal resources, and aboriginal population*. Performed under the sanction of government, in the year 1821. pp. 224, 293. New York, 1825.

FLINT, TIMOTHY

1826. *Recollections of the Last Ten Years, Passed in Occasional Residences and Journeyings in the Valley of the Mississippi . . . in a Series of Letters to the Rev. James Flint, of Salem, Massachusetts*. pp. 164-74. *Lines* (by Micah Flint) *on the Mounds in the Cahokia Prairie, Illinois*. pp. 167-9. Boston, 1826.

PRIEST, JOSIAH

1833. *American Antiquities and Discoveries in the West. Traits of Ancient Cities on the Mississippi*. pp. 193-4. Albany, 1833.

PECK, JOHN M.

1834. *A Gazetteer of Illinois*. Jacksonville, 1834. 2nd ed. rev. Philadelphia, 1837.

LATROBE, CHARLES JASPER

1835. *The Rambler in North America*. Vol. II, pp. 175-182. London and New York, 1835.

FLAGG, EDMUND

1838. *The Far West*. pp. 166-167. New York, 1838.

PARKER, SAMUEL

1838. *Journal of an Exploring Tour Beyond the Rocky Mountains.* p. 39. Ithaca, N. Y., 1838.

MORRISON, ANNA R.

1840. "Diary of a Journey from New York to Jacksonville, November-December, 1840." *Journal of the Illinois State Historical Society.* Vol. 7, No. 1. pp. 34-50. April, 1914.

THOMAS, LEWIS FOULK, and

WILD, J. C.

1841. *The Valley of the Mississippi Illustrated in a Series of Views.* Edited by Lewis Foulk Thomas. Painted and Lithographed by J. C. Wild. Accompanied with Historical Descriptions. pp. 52-6, and Plate X. St. Louis, 1841.

DICKENS, CHARLES

1842. *American Notes.* Chapter XIII. London, 1842.

MAXIMILIAN, PRINCE OF WIED-NEUWIED

1843. *Travels in the Interior of North America.* Translated from the German. pp. 475-6. London, 1843.

FEATHERSTONHAUGH, G. W.

1844. *Excursion Through the Slave States.* Vol. I, pp. 264-272. London and New York, 1844.

SQUIER, E. G. and

DAVIS, E. H.

1848. "Ancient Monuments of the Mississippi Valley." *Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge*, Vol. I, Chap. VIII, p. 174, Fig. 60. Washington, 1848.

LEWIS, HENRY and

DOUGLAS, GEORGE B.

1857. *Das illustrierte Mississippi thal, dargestellt in 80 nach der Natur aufgenommenen Ansichten . . . von H. Lewis . . . Nebst einer historischen und geographischen Beschreibung der den Fluss Begrenzenden Länder.* pp. 331-6. Düsseldorf, 1857.

RAU, CHARLES

1867. "Indian Pottery." *Annual Report of the Smithsonian Institution*, 1866. pp. 346-55. Washington, 1867.

DEHASS, W.

1869. "Archæology of the Mississippi Valley." *Proceedings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science.* 17th Meeting, held at Chicago, Illinois, Aug., 1868. pp. 288-302. Cambridge, 1869.

LUBBOCK, JOHN

1869. 1st Baron Avebury. *Pre-Historic Times, as Illustrated by Ancient Remains, and the Manners and Customs of Modern Savages.* 2nd ed., London, 1869. 6th ed., pp. 253, 260. New York, 1900.

RAU, CHARLES

1872. "A Deposit of Agricultural Flint Implements in Southern Illinois." *Annual Report of the Smithsonian Institution*, 1868. pp. 401-7. Washington, 1872.



- FOSTER, J. W.  
1873. *Pre-Historic Races of the United States of America*. pp. 106-7. Chicago, 1873.
- HOWLAND, HENRY R.  
1877. "Recent Archæological Discoveries in the American Bottom." *Bulletin of the Buffalo Society of Natural Sciences*, Vol. III, No. 5, p. 204. Buffalo, 1877.
- MACLEAN, J. P.  
1879. *The Mound Builders*. pp. 42-3. Cincinnati, 1879.
- CONANT, A. J.  
1879. *Foot-Prints of Vanished Races in the Mississippi Valley*. pp. 53-61. St. Louis, 1879.
- PUTNAM, F. W. and  
PATRICK, DR.  
1879. *Twelfth Annual Report of the Peabody Museum*. p. 472. Cambridge, 1879.
- SHORT, JOHN T.  
1880. *The North Americans of Antiquity*. pp. 40-3. New York, 1880.
- MCADAMS, WILLIAM  
1881. "Ancient Mounds of Illinois." *Proceedings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science*. 29th Meeting, held at Boston, Mass., August, 1880. pp. 710-18. Salem, 1881.
- THWING, C. F.  
1881. "The Peabody Museum of Archæology and Ethnology." *Harper's New Monthly Magazine*, Vol. LXIII, pp. 670-7. New York, October, 1881.
- MCADAMS, WILLIAM  
1882. *Antiquities [of Madison County] History of Madison County, Illinois*. pp. 58-64. Edwardsville, 1882.
- NADAILLAC, MARQUISDE  
1884. *Pre-Historic America*. Translated by N. D'Anvers. Edited by W. H. Dall. p. 103. New York and London, 1884.
- MCADAMS, WILLIAM  
1887. *Records of Ancient Races in the Mississippi Valley*. pp. 98-109. St. Louis, 1887.
- PATRICK, J. R.  
1888. Article on Monks Mound. *St. Louis Globe-Democrat*. Feb. 5, 1888.
- SNYDER, J. F.  
1894. "An Illinois 'Teocalli'." *The Archæologist*, Vol. II, No. 9, pp. 259-264. Waterloo, Indiana.
- THOMAS, CYRUS  
1894. "Report on the Mound Explorations of the Bureau of Ethnology." *12th Annual Report of the Bureau of Ethnology, 1890-91*, pp. 131-4. Washington, 1894.
- SHIPP, BERNARD  
1897. *Indian Antiquities of America*. pp. 251-4. Philadelphia, 1897.

BATEMAN, NEWTON and  
SELBY, PAUL

1900. *Historical Encyclopedia of Illinois*. Edited by Newton Bateman and Paul Selby. pp. 388-91. Chicago, 1900.

SNYDER, JOHN F.

1900. "The Field for Archæological Research in Illinois." *Transactions of the Illinois State Historical Society for 1900*, pp. 21-9. Springfield, 1900.

SMITH, HARLAN INGERSOLL

1902. "The Great American Pyramid." *Harper's Monthly Magazine*, Vol. 104, pp. 199-204. New York, January, 1902.

PETERSON, C. A.

1902. "The Mound Building Age in North America." Read Feb. 15, 1902, before Missouri State Historical Society.

BUSHNELL, DAVID I., JR.

1904. "The Cahokia and Surrounding Mound Groups." *Papers of the Peabody Museum of American Archæology and Ethnology*, Harvard University, Vol. III, No. 1. Cambridge, May, 1904.

PARRISH, RANDALL

1905. *Historic Illinois: The Romance of the Earlier Days*. pp. 15-26. Chicago, 1905.

HODGE, FREDERICK WEBB

1907. *Handbook of American Indians North of Mexico*. Edited by Frederick Webb Hodge. Smithsonian Institution, Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 30, Vol. 1, pp. 186, 949-51. Washington, 1907.

MCADAMS, CLARK

1907. "The Archæology of Illinois." *Transactions of the Illinois State Historical Society for 1907*, pp. 35-47. Springfield, 1907.

RANDALL, E. O.

1908. *The Masterpieces of the Ohio Mound Builders*. pp. 1-13. Columbus, 1908.

SNYDER, JOHN F.

1909. "Prehistoric Illinois. Certain Indian Mounds Technically Considered." *Journal of the Illinois State Historical Society*. Vols. 1 and 2, pp. 31-40, 47-65, 71-92. Springfield, 1909.

FOWKE, GERARD

1910. *Antiquities of Central and South-Eastern Missouri*. Smithsonian Institution, Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 37, pp. 5-7. Washington, 1910.

FENNEMAN, N. M.

1911. *Geology and Mineral Resources of the St. Louis Quadrangle Missouri-Illinois*. U. S. G. S. Bulletin 438, Dept. of the Interior, p. 12. Washington, 1911.

SNYDER, JOHN F.

1911. "Prehistoric Illinois. Its Psychozoic Problems." *Journal of the Illinois State Historical Society*, Vol. 4, pp. 288-302. Springfield, 1911-12.

1912. "The Kaskaskia Indians. A Tentative Hypothesis." *Journal of the Illinois State Historical Society*, Vol. 5, pp. 231-45. Springfield, 1912-13.
- 1913 (?). *A Booklet on the Prehistoric Mounds of Illinois*. 8 pp. Prepared by the "Monks of Cahokia." "This booklet is respectfully submitted to call to the attention of the public a project, now before the General Assembly of Illinois, to make of these prehistoric mounds a State Park."
- BUSHNELL, DAVID I., JR.  
1915. "The Origin and Various Types of Mounds in Eastern United States." *Proceedings Nineteenth International Congress of Americanists*, Washington, 1915. pp. 43-7. Washington, 1917.
- RAMEY FAMILY  
1916. *The Mound Builders. The Greatest Monument of Prehistoric Man, Cahokia or Monks Mound*. 28 pp. Excerpts from McAdams and others. Prepared by the Ramey family about 1916.
- JESSUP, THEODORE  
1916. "Illinois State Parks." A paper read before the Chicago Literary Club. April 10, 1916. pp. 9-10.
- SNYDER, JOHN F.  
1917. "The Great Cahokia Mound." *Journal of the Illinois State Historical Society*, Vol. 10, pp. 256-9. Springfield, 1917-18.
- CAHOKIA MOUND ASSOCIATION  
1917 (?). "Save the Mounds." Collinsville, 1917 (?). 32 pp. Testimonials, petitions, etc., gathered by the Cahokia Mound Association.
- ALVORD, CLARENCE WALWORTH  
1920. *The Illinois Country 1673-1818*. The Centennial History of Illinois, Vol. I, Chap. II. Springfield, 1920.
- ENGLISH, THOMAS H.  
1921. "The Cahokia Indian Mounds: A Plea for their Preservation." *The Geographical Review*, Vol. XI, pp. 207-11. New York, April, 1921.
- MOOREHEAD, WARREN K.  
1921. "Help Save the Cahokia Mounds." Circular, 4 pp. Andover, Mass., August, 1921. Reprinted in part in the *Literary Digest* for September 10, 1921, pp. 22-3.  
1922. "Preservation of the Cahokia Mounds." *The Wisconsin Archaeologist*, n. s. Vol. 1, No. 1, p. 25, Jan., 1922. Milwaukee.  
1922. "The Cahokia Mounds: a preliminary paper." *University of Illinois Bulletin*, Vol. XIX, No. 35. April 24, 1922. Urbana.  
1922. "The Hopewell Mound Group of Ohio." *Field Museum of Natural History, Publication 211, Anthropological Series*, Vol. VI, p. 177. Chicago, 1922.
- CROOK, A. R.  
1922. "The Origin of the Cahokia Mounds." *Bulletin of the Illinois State Museum*. 26 pp. Springfield, May, 1922.

BUSHNELL, DAVID I., JR.

1922. "Archæological Reconnaissance of the Cahokia and Related Mound Groups. Explorations and Field-Work of the Smithsonian Institution in 1921." *Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections*, Vol. 72, No. 15, pp. 92-105, Washington, 1922.

WISSLER, CLARK

1922. *The American Indian*. An Introduction to the Anthropology of the New World. 2nd ed., pp. 105, 116, 268. New York, 1922.

MOULTON, ROBERT H.

1923. "Save our American Pyramids." *The Outlook*, Vol. 133, pp. 83-5. New York, Jan. 10, 1923.

1923. "Movement is Launched to Preserve Prehistoric Mounds in Illinois." *America To-day* combined with *Fort Dearborn Magazine*, Vol. IV, No. 4, July, 1923. Published by American Bond & Mortgage Company, Inc. Chicago, New York, etc.

MOOREHEAD, WARREN K.

1923. "The Cahokia Mounds." *University of Illinois Bulletin*, Vol. XXI, Oct. 8, 1923, No. 6, Urbana, 97 pp. Pt. I. "A Report of Progress on the Exploration of the Cahokia Group," by Warren K. Moorehead, pp. 7-50. Pt. II. "The Geological Aspects of Some of the Cahokia Mounds," by Morris M. Leighton, *Illinois Geological Survey*. Notes on Cahokia Skeletons, by Dr. R. J. Terry, pp. 51-2.

BAKER, FRANK COLLINS

1924. "The Use of Molluscan Shells by the Cahokia Mound Builders." *Transactions of the Illinois State Academy of Science*, Vol. 16. pp. 328-334. 1924.

GARDNER, FRED

1926. "Mysterious Old Monks Mound is to become a State Park and Tourist Camp." *The Globe-Democrat Magazine*. St. Louis, September 5, 1926.

TOWNLEY, E. C.

1927. *Some Mound Builders in Illinois*. *Art and Archæology*. Vol. XXIV, No. 6, pp. 234-8, Washington, December, 1927.

THROOP, ADDISON J.

*The Mound Builders of Illinois*. Call Printing Company, East St. Louis, Illinois, 1928.

## ILLUSTRATIONS

### PLATE I

Cross section of Kunnemann Mound a short distance north of the center. The outline is not exact, but it is approximate. Depth of strata in feet at the left of the figure. A—Top removed. B—Dark, rather uneven gumbo layer. C—Yellowish loam, mixed with sand. D—Burned Floor. E—Altar. F—Vegetation. G—Dark soil, rather irregular. H—Light sand stratum. I—Thin vegetation layer. J—Yellowish loam. K—Dark earth. L—Mixed earth. M—Clear sand base.

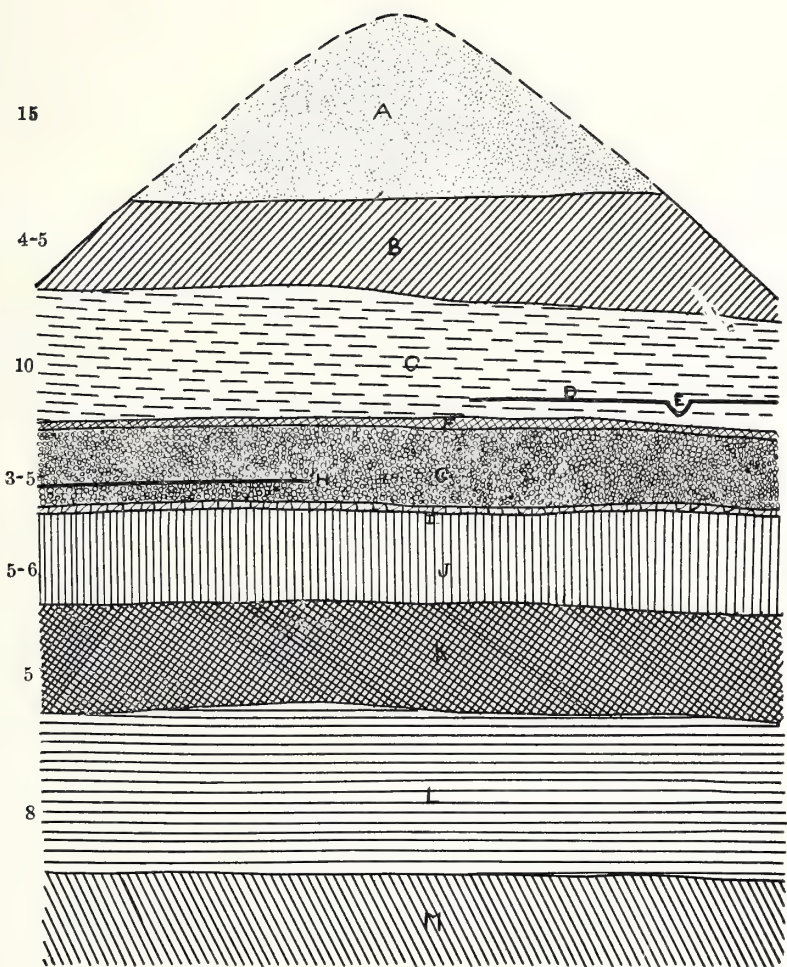


PLATE I

PLATE II

Fig. 1.—East view of Monks Mound. Fig. 2.—North view of Monks Mound.  
Photographs by Mr. Gordon Severant.





PLATE II

PLATE III

Fig. 1.—Monks Mound as it appeared at the time of Putnam's visit.

Fig. 2.—Dr. Patrick's restoration of Monks Mound.

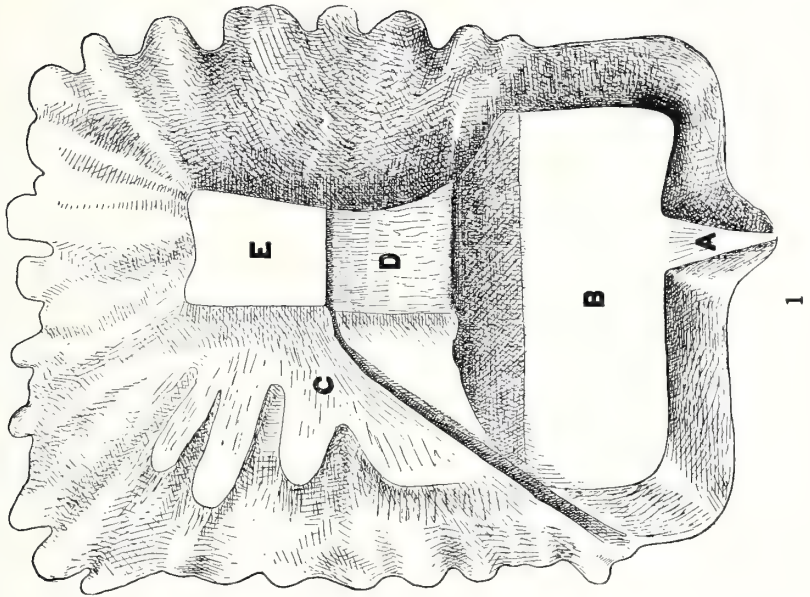


PLATE III

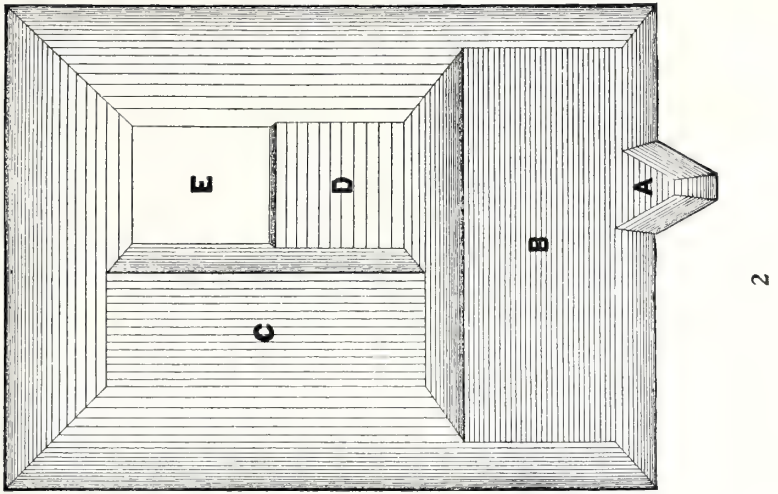


PLATE IV

The Red Mound south of Monks Mound.



PLATE IV

PLATE V

View of the Fox Mound and another mound located about three-fourths of a mile south of Monks Mound. Photograph by Miss Ruth Wallace, Monticello Seminary.



PLATE V

PLATE VI

One of the smaller mounds of the group, north of Monks Mound. Photograph  
by Mr. Gordon Severant.





PLATE VI

PLATE VII

Fig. 1.—A large pond near the Kunnemann Mound. Fig. 2.—The face of the trench of the Kunnemann Mound at a height of 25 feet. Fig. 3.—Trench in the Kunnemann Mound.

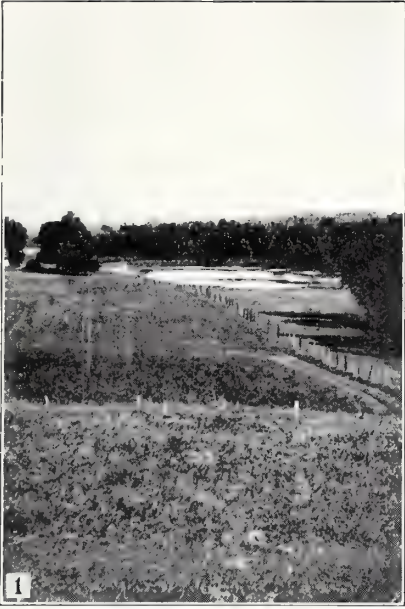


PLATE VII

PLATE VIII

The altar of baked clay in the Kunnemann Mound.

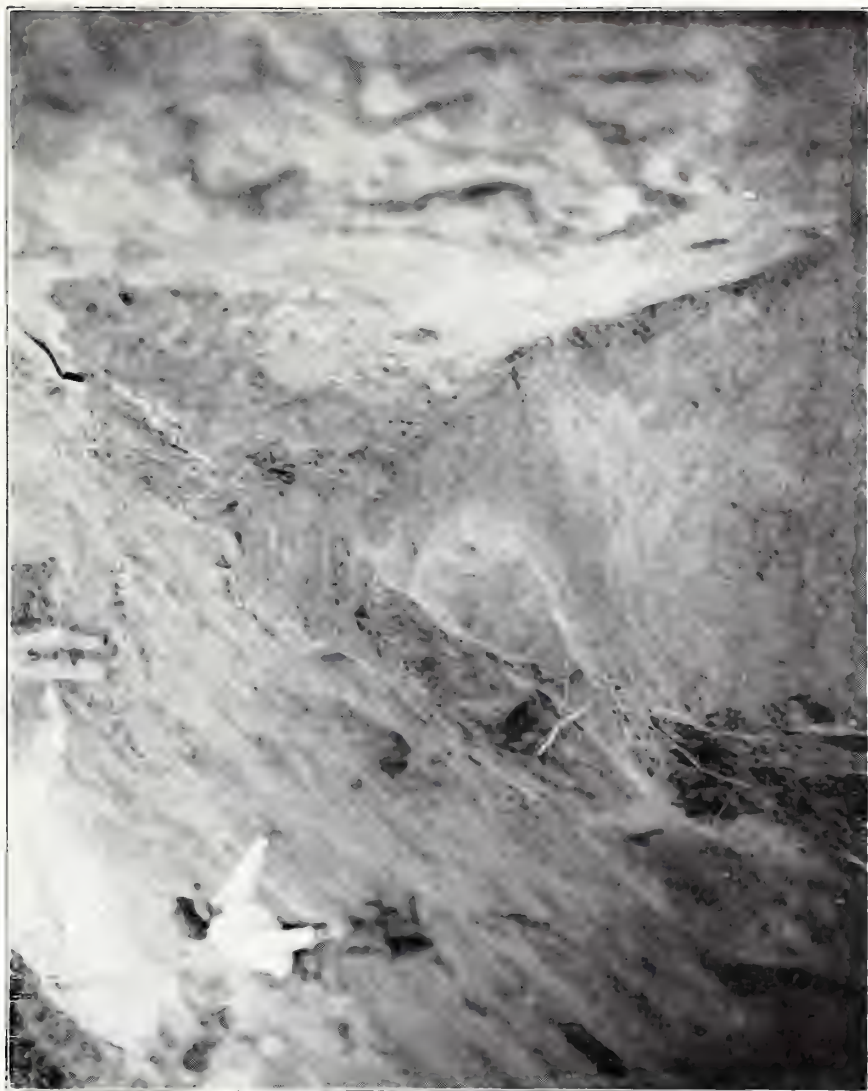


PLATE VIII

PLATE IX

Skeleton of Cahokia Indian in the Edwards Mound.



PLATE IX

PLATE X

Fragments of pottery obtained during excavation of the James Ramey Mound,  
No. 33.





PLATE X

PLATE XI

Fragments of pottery from the village site located on the  
Wells and Tippetts farms.



PLATE XI

PLATE XII

Fragments of pottery from village site on the Ramey, Wells,  
and Tippetts farms.



PLATE XII

PLATE XIII

The Cahokia type of arrowheads. From collection of Dr. George Higgins.

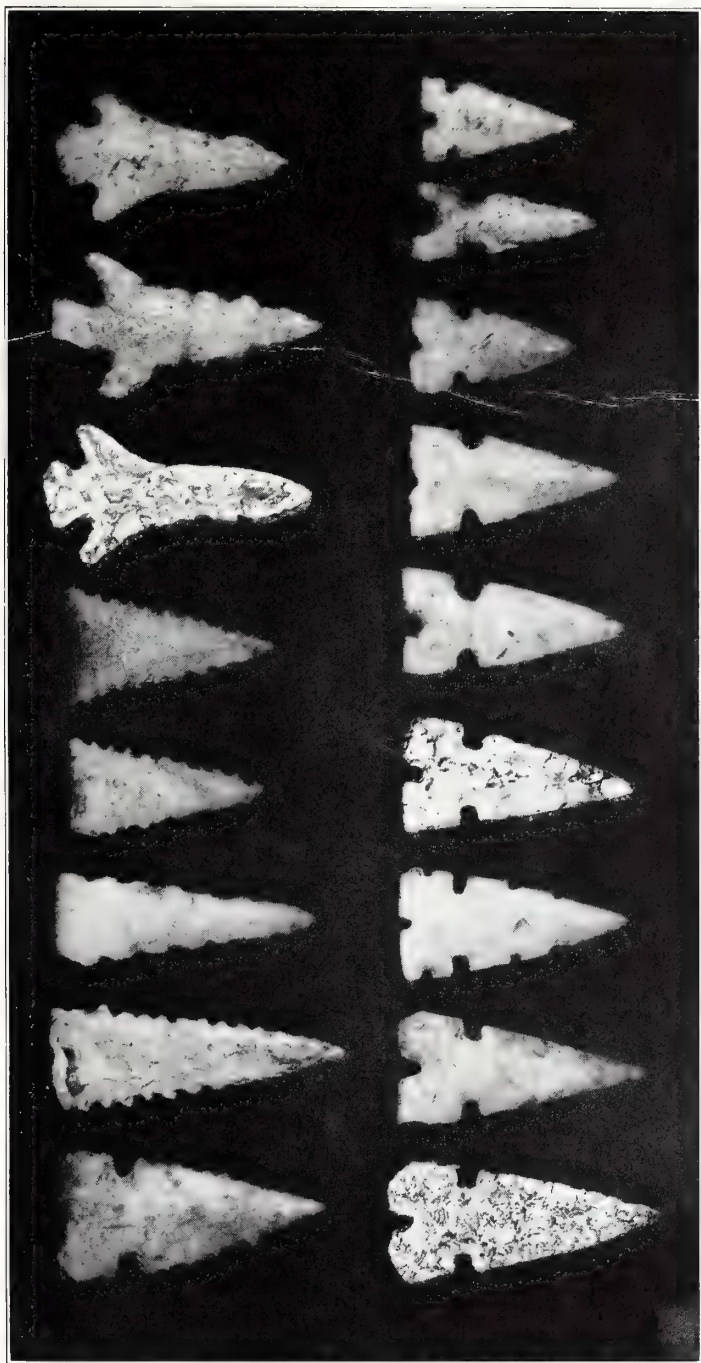


PLATE XIII

PLATE XIV

Fig. 1.—The hollowed bone awl referred to on page 102. Fig. 2.—A slender, broken drill. Fig. 3.—Cahokia type arrowheads. All found in the field opposite Monks Mound. From Ramey collection.



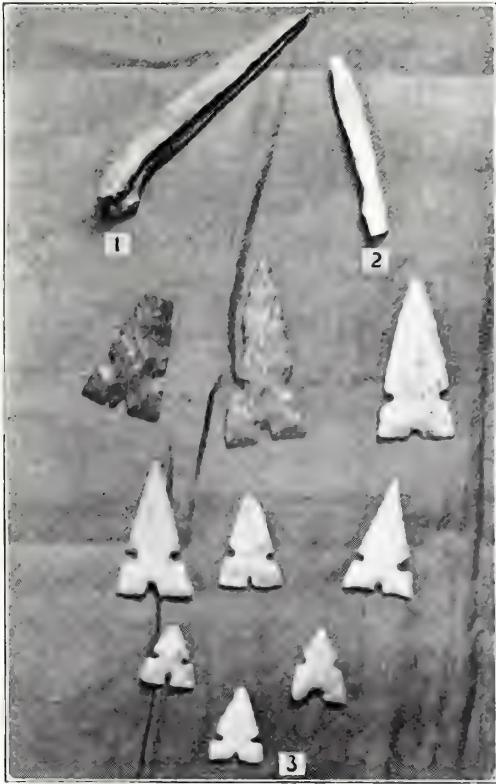


PLATE XIV

PLATE XV

Fig. 1.—Pottery bird effigy. Found by Mr. M. A. Wertheimer, south of Monks Mound. Fig. 2.—Agricultural implements found by Mr. Seeling north of the Merrell Mound. ( $\frac{1}{6}$  natural size.)



PLATE XV

PLATE XVI

Fig. 1.—Hand and forearm in clay. Fig. 2.—Effigy in clay. Fig. 3.—Ornament in red stone. Fig. 4.—Stone pipe. Fig. 5.—Effigy in clay. Fig. 6.—Engraved stone. Fig. 7.—Stone pipe. Fig. 8.—Cutting tool (hatchet). From the Ramey collection. ( $\frac{2}{3}$  natural size.)



PLATE XVI

#### PLATE XVII

Figs. 1, 2, 3.—Burial pots with skeleton No. 12, Mound No. 20; 2, 3, characteristic Cahokia forms, especially 3. (A363, a, b, c.) Fig. 4.—Small pot with skeleton No. 9, a child (A304). Fig. 5.—Small crucible-like pot from burned basin, Sawmill Mound (A305). Fig. 6.—Burial pot with skeleton No. 11, Sawmill Mound (A306). ( $\frac{2}{5}$  natural size.)

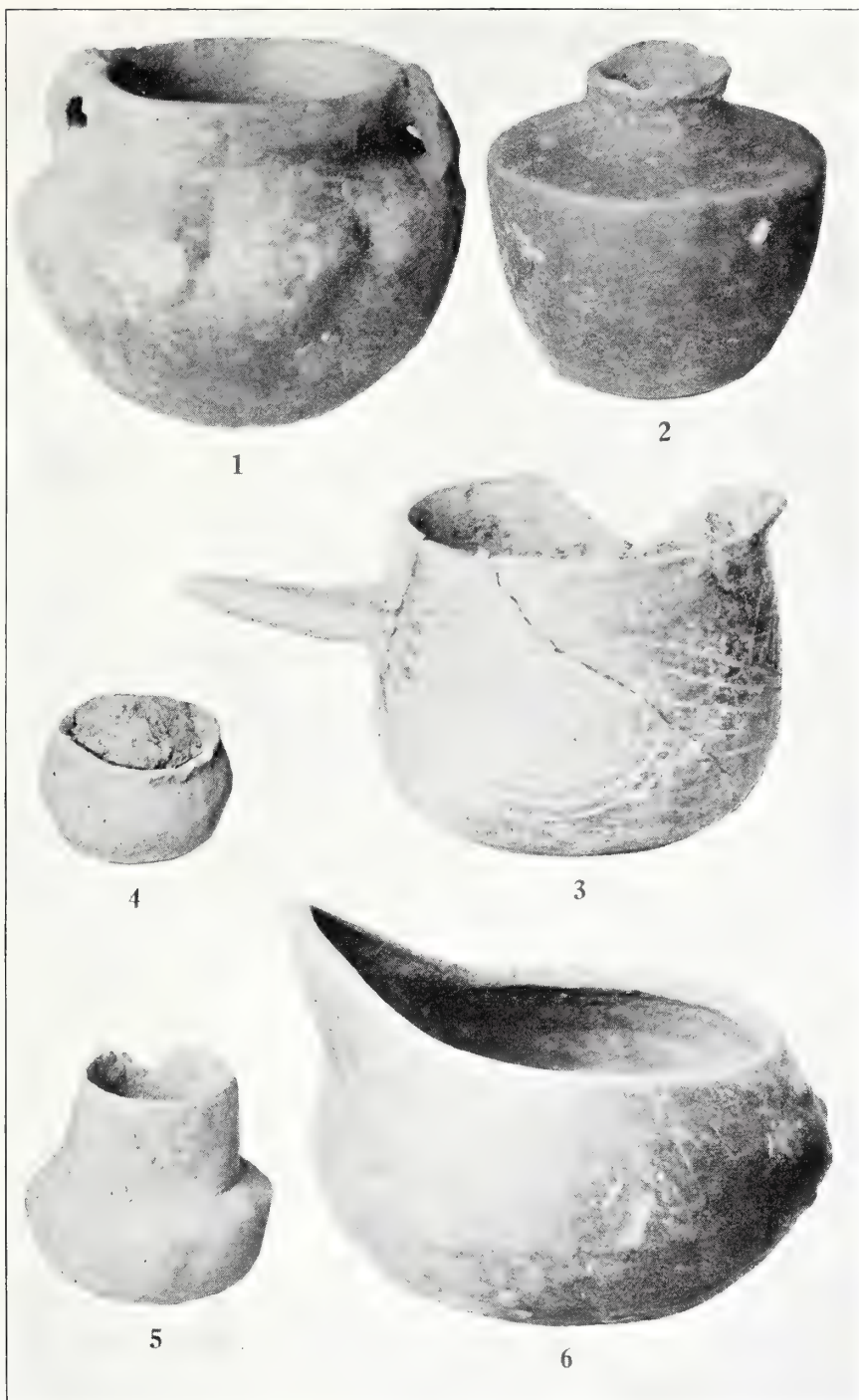


PLATE XVII

#### PLATE XVIII

Fig. 1.—A vessel of considerable size, probably a salt pan, Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A355). Figs. 2-4.—Grooved stones of quartzite-like sandstone, possibly sinew stones (A356), Ramey Village Site. Fig. 5.—Grooved stone of quartzite-like sandstone, from burned basin 100 yards south of Sawmill Mound (A357). (About  $\frac{1}{2}$  natural size.)



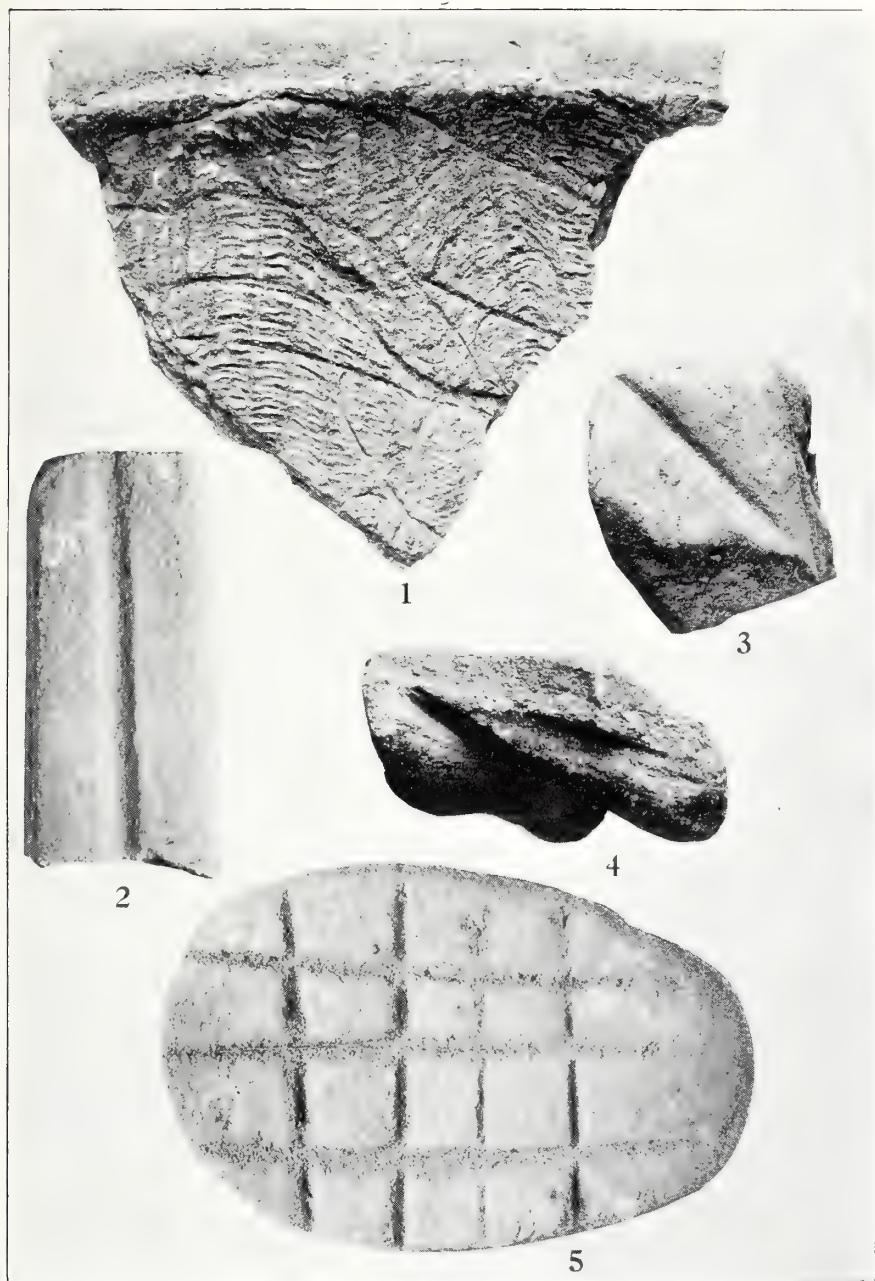


PLATE XVIII

PLATE XIX

Figs. 1-6.—Types of decorated pottery. Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A313).  
( $\frac{3}{4}$  natural size.)



PLATE XIX

PLATE XX

Figs. 1-9.—Fragments of pottery. Wells-Tippetts Village Site, 1 to 3½ ft. below surface (A313). Fig. 10.—Peculiarly decorated pottery fragment, Ramey Village Site (A314). Figs. 5, 6 are common Cahokia designs. (¾ natural size.)

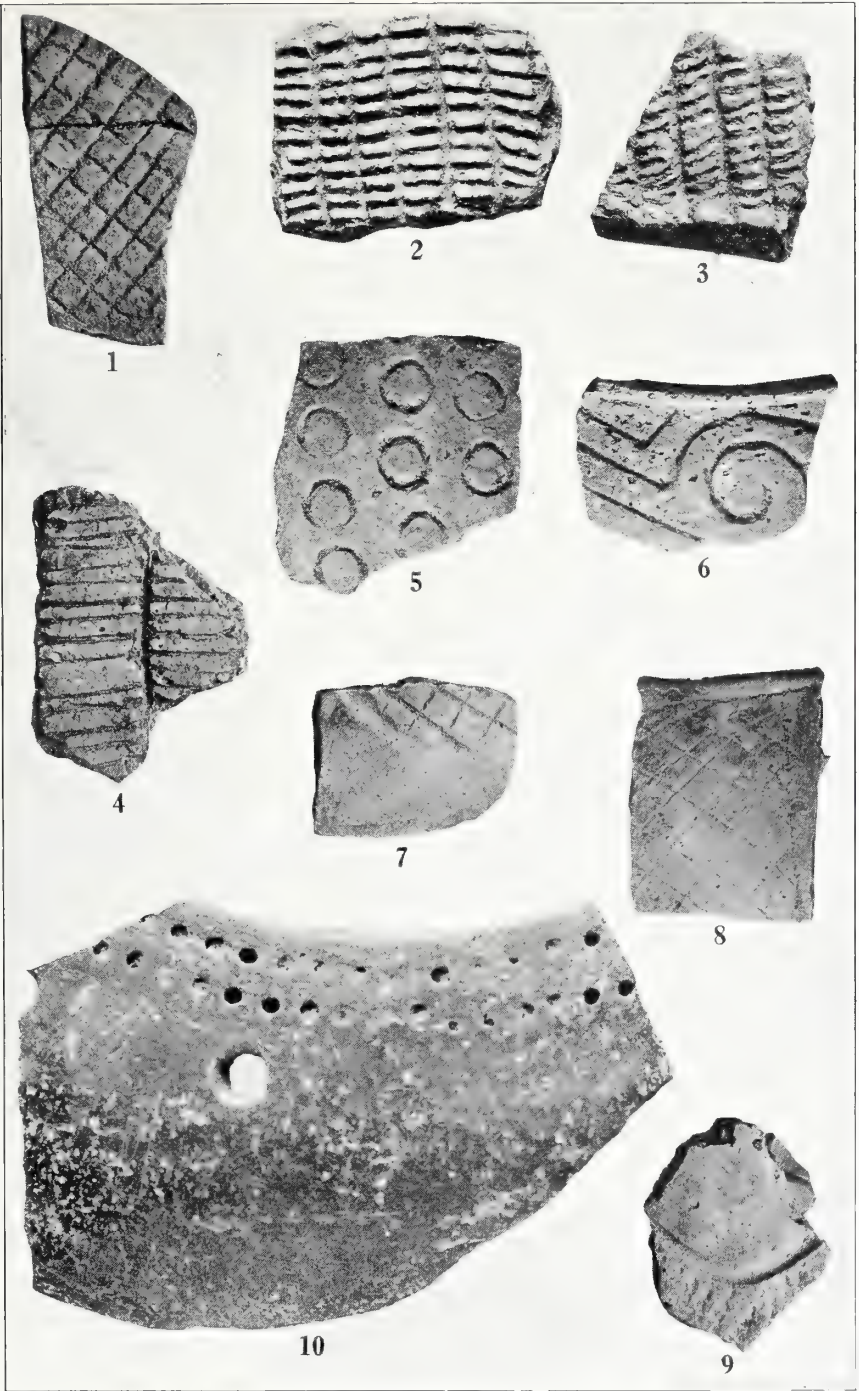


PLATE XX

PLATE XXI

Fig. 1.—Pottery fragment, James Ramey Mound, depth of 23 feet (A<sub>310</sub>).  
Figs. 2-8.—Ramey Village Site, types of pottery design (A<sub>312</sub>). ( $\frac{3}{4}$  natural size.)

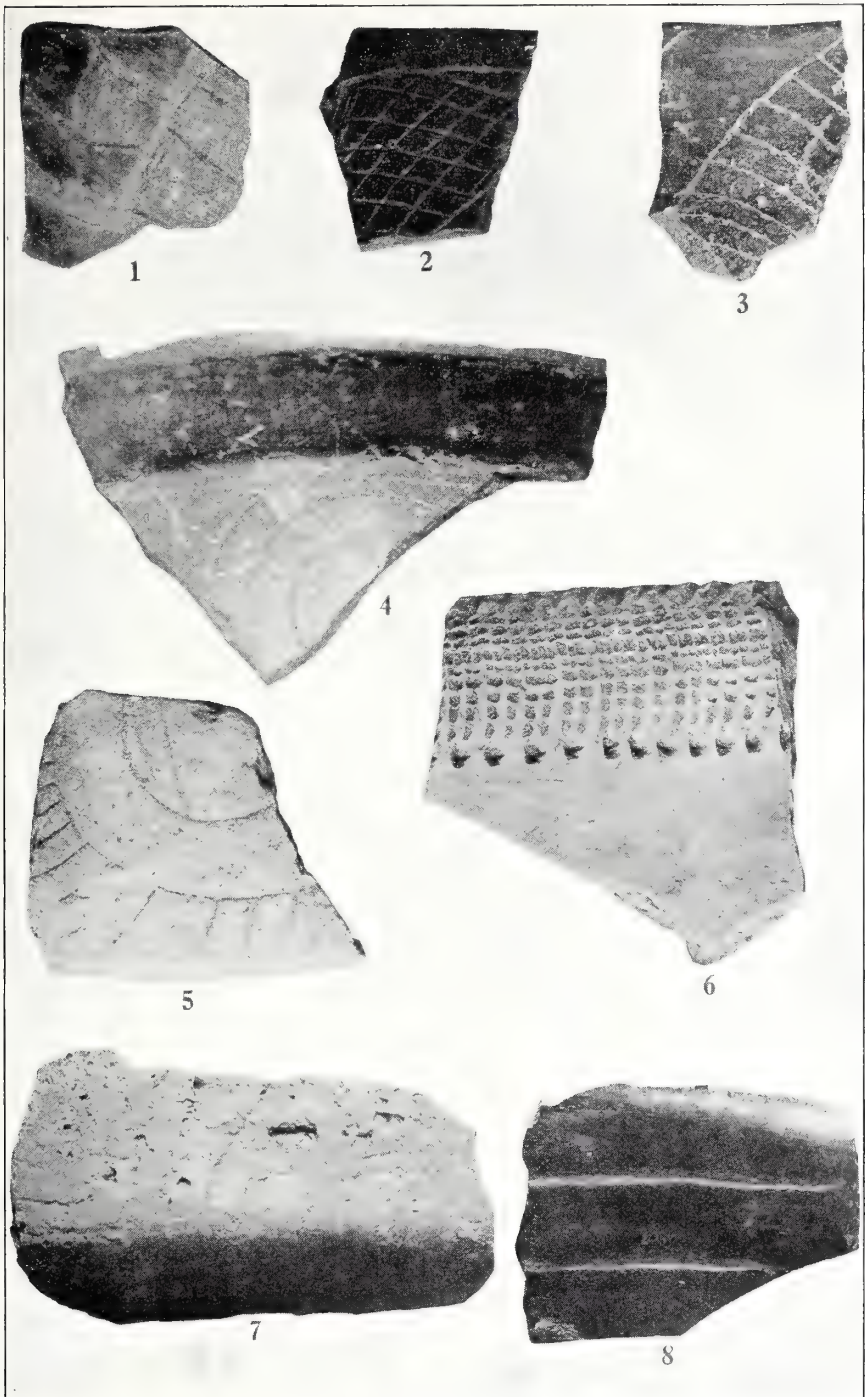


PLATE XXI

PLATE XXII

Decorated pottery from the James Ramey Mound. Figs. 1-3.—Near surface (A307). Fig. 4.—Depth of 19 ft. (A309). Figs. 5, 6.—Depth of 15 ft. (A309). Fig. 7.—Depth of 23 ft. (A310). Fig. 2.—Engraved sandstone (A311). ( $\frac{4}{5}$  natural size.)



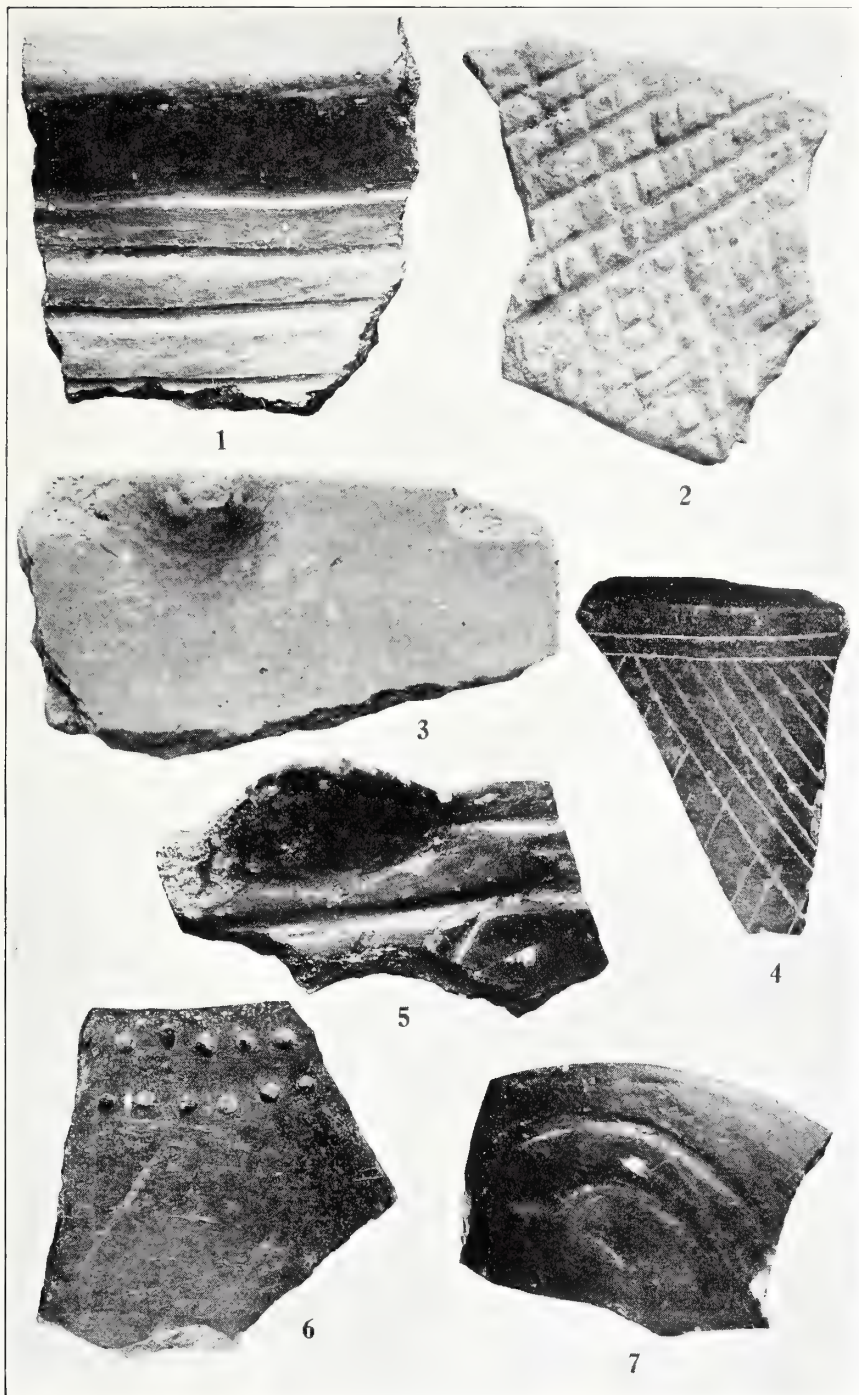


PLATE XXII

PLATE XXIII

Fig. 1.—Shell gorget with skeleton No. 11, Sawmill Mound (A321). Fig. 2.—Shell effigy, Sawmill Mound, made from shell of fresh water mussel (A322). Fig. 3.—Nose or ear ornament made from shell of fresh water mussel (*Elliptio dilatatus*) James Ramey Mound (A323). Fig. 4.—Clay bird's-head effigy, Wells-Tippetts Village Site, 3 ft. deep (A324). Figs. 5, 6.—Clay bird's-head effigies, James Ramey Mound, 16-23 feet below surface (A325). Fig. 7.—Clay mammal-head effigy, Sawmill Mound (A326). Fig. 8.—Portion of clay pot or ornament (A327). Fig. 9.—Ornament on rim of pot (A328). Figs. 8, 9.—From James Ramey Mound. ( $\frac{3}{4}$  natural size.)



PLATE XXIII

#### PLATE XXIV

Figs. 2, 4, 9, 12.—Shell beads made from marine conch (*Busycon*) (A329). Figs. 5, 6.—Shell beads made from fresh water mussels (A330). Figs. 1, 11.—Shell ornaments from marine *Busycon* (A331). Figs. 7, 8, 10, 20.—Shell ornaments made from fresh water mussels (A332). Figs. 13, 15, 17.—Shells and central axis of marine conch, *Busycon perversa* (A333). Fig. 16.—Marine conch, *Busycon carica* (A442). Fig. 19.—Ornament made of side of *Busycon* shell (A334). Fig. 14.—Marine shell, *Strombus Pugilis alatus* (A334). Fig. 18.—Marine olive shell, *Oliva literata* (A336). All from James Ramey Mound, between 8 and 23 feet below surface. (Figs. 1 to 12, about natural size; 13 to 20, about  $\frac{3}{5}$  natural size.)

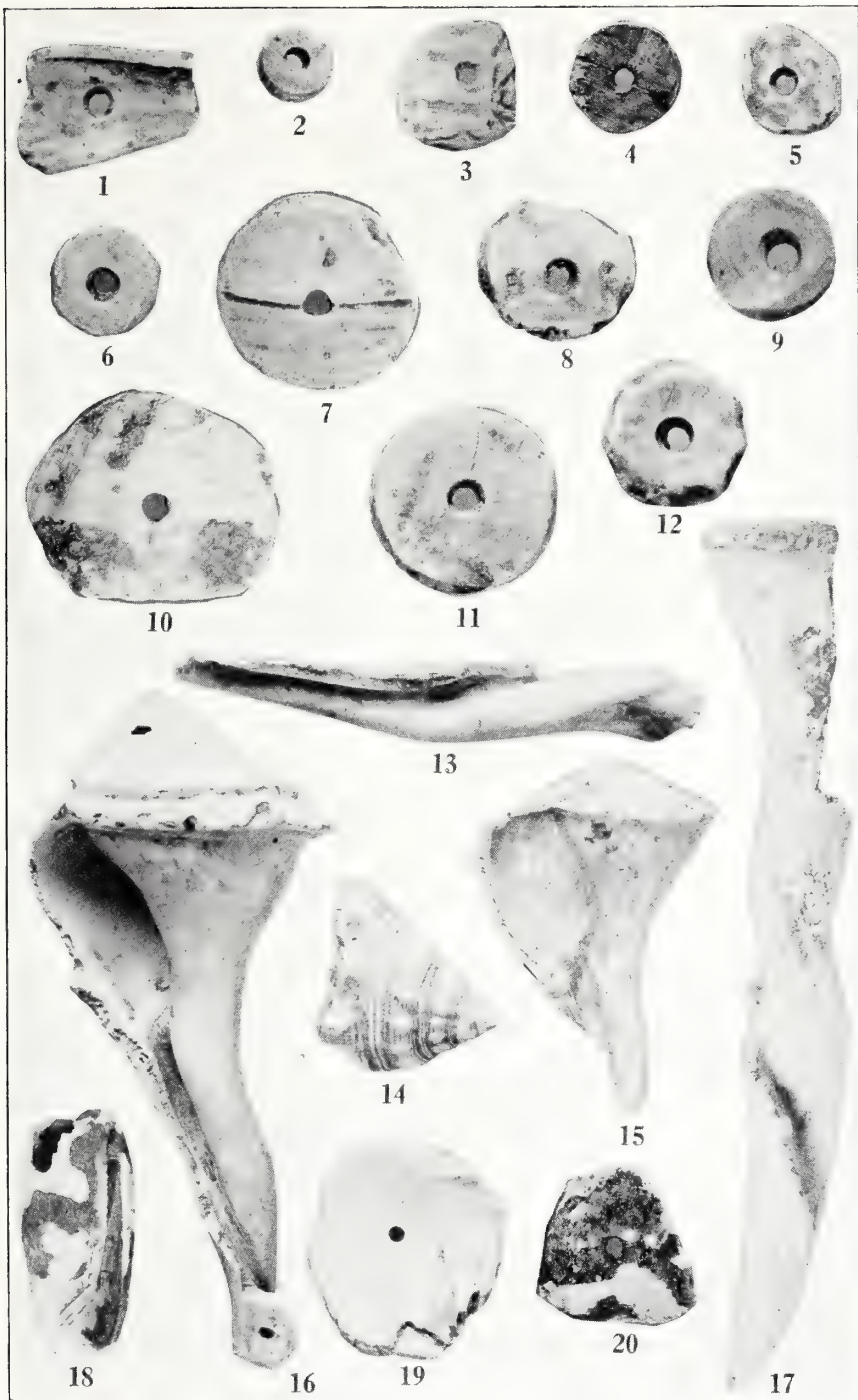


PLATE XXIV

#### PLATE XXV

Figs. 1, 2.—Awl and celt made of deer bone (A337, A338) Wells-Tippetts Village Site. Figs. 3, 7.—Deer bone awls, James Ramey Mound, 8 feet deep (A339). Fig. 4.—Bone awl with skeleton No. 39, Pittsburg Lake (A340). Figs. 5, 6.—Bone awls (A341, A342). From Judge Sullivan's Mound, 10 ft. below surface. Fig. 8.—Bone knife with skeleton No. 11, Sawmill Mound (A343). Fig. 9.—Part of breast bone of Virginia deer, Ramey Village Site (A344). Fig. 10.—Awl made from heel (calcaneous bone) of deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*) found with skeleton No. 18 (Mounds 19, 20, 21) (A345). Fig. 11.—Pathologic leg bone of deer, from Ramey Village Site (A346). Fig. 12.—Foot bone of Wapiti with deeply incised lines, James Ramey Mound (A347). Fig. 13.—Lower jaw of Virginia deer used as a chisel or gouge, Sawmill Mound (A348). (About  $\frac{2}{3}$  natural size.)

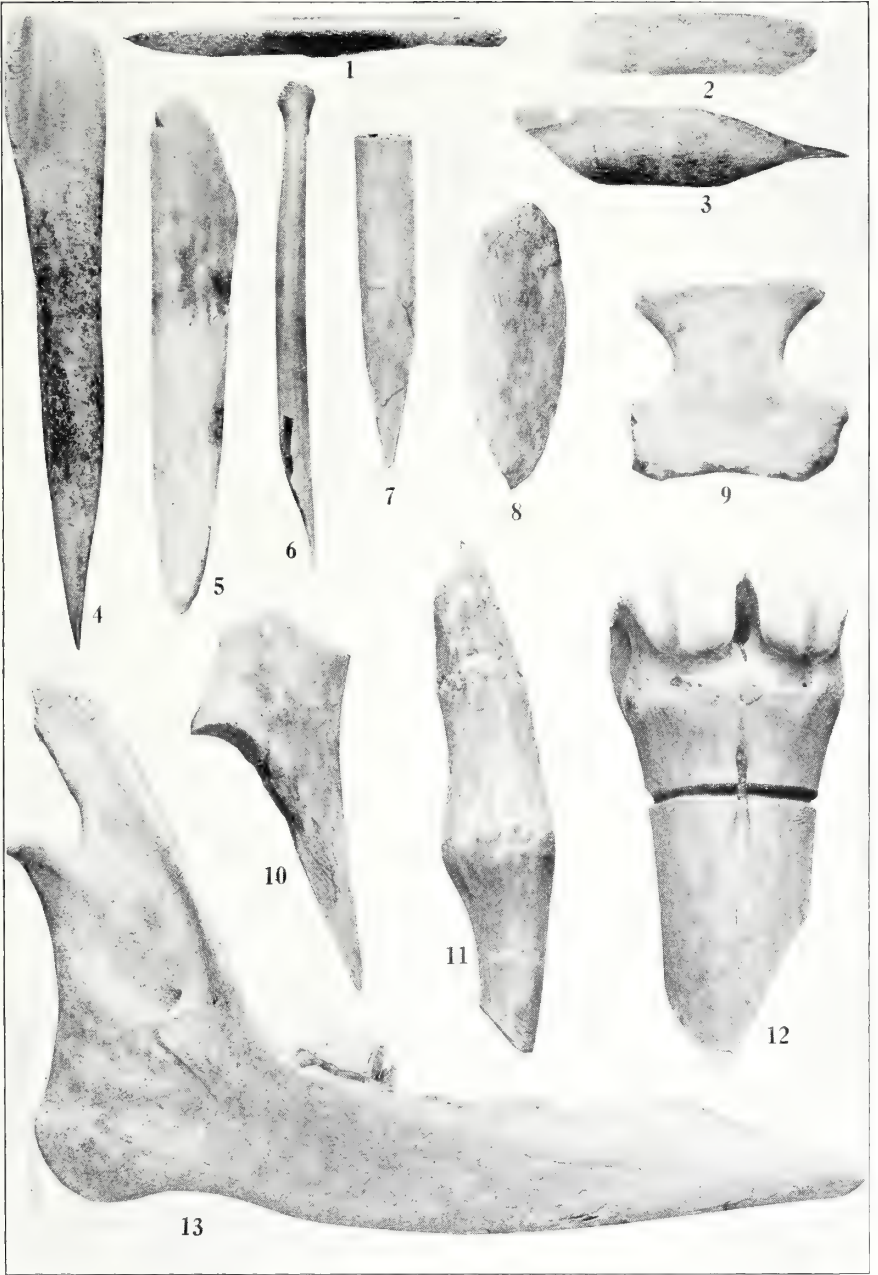


PLATE XXV

PLATE XXVI

Fig. 1.—Flint or chert knife of fine workmanship; James Ramey Mound, 12 feet deep, near stake 125 (A358). Fig. 3.—Shouldered hoe. Figs. 2, 4.—Spades, of flint or chert, from field southwest of Monks Mound (A359, A360). Fig. 5.—Spade of flint or chert; James Ramey Mound, west side, 17 feet deep (A361). (About  $\frac{1}{3}$  natural size.)



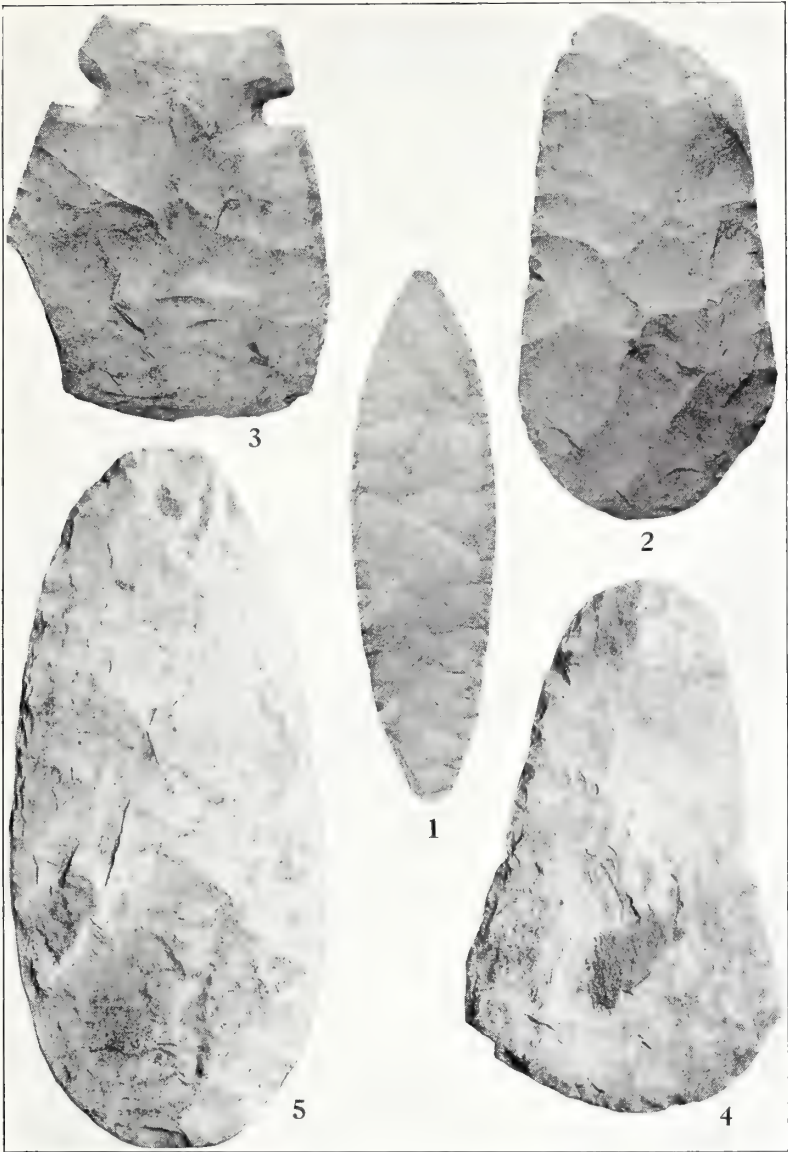


PLATE XXVI

#### PLATE XXVII

Pottery discs perforated and unperforated, are common in the mounds and on the surface. Attention is directed to the peculiar design on Fig. 3. Fragments such as Fig. 1, with a rude circle and cross lines are frequently found. Fig. 1.—Pottery fragment with oval design; Sawmill Mound, 3 feet deep (A315). Fig. 2.—Pottery disc, James Ramey Mound, 15 feet deep (A316). Fig. 3.—Fragment with peculiar design; Stockyards Village Site (A317). Fig. 4.—Pottery disc, James Ramey Mound, 12 feet deep (A318). Fig. 5.—Perforated clay disc, Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A319). Fig. 6.—Perforated disc of fine-grained sandstone, Ramey Village Site (A320). ( $\frac{3}{4}$  natural size.)



PLATE XXVII

PLATE XXVIII

Fig. 1.—Flint knife, broken; James Ramey Mound, 8 feet deep (A349). Fig. 2.—Fine-pointed needle of bone, with skeleton No. 30; Mounds 10, 20, 21 (A350). Figs. 3-5.—Bone awls, Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A351). Figs. 6-8.—Flint arrow points, James Ramey Mound, 17 feet deep (A352). Figs. 9, 10.—Flint war arrow points, Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A353). Fig. 11.—Flint spear head, James Ramey Mound, 17 feet deep (A354). (Figs. 2-5,  $\frac{3}{4}$  natural size; 1, 6-11, about natural size.)

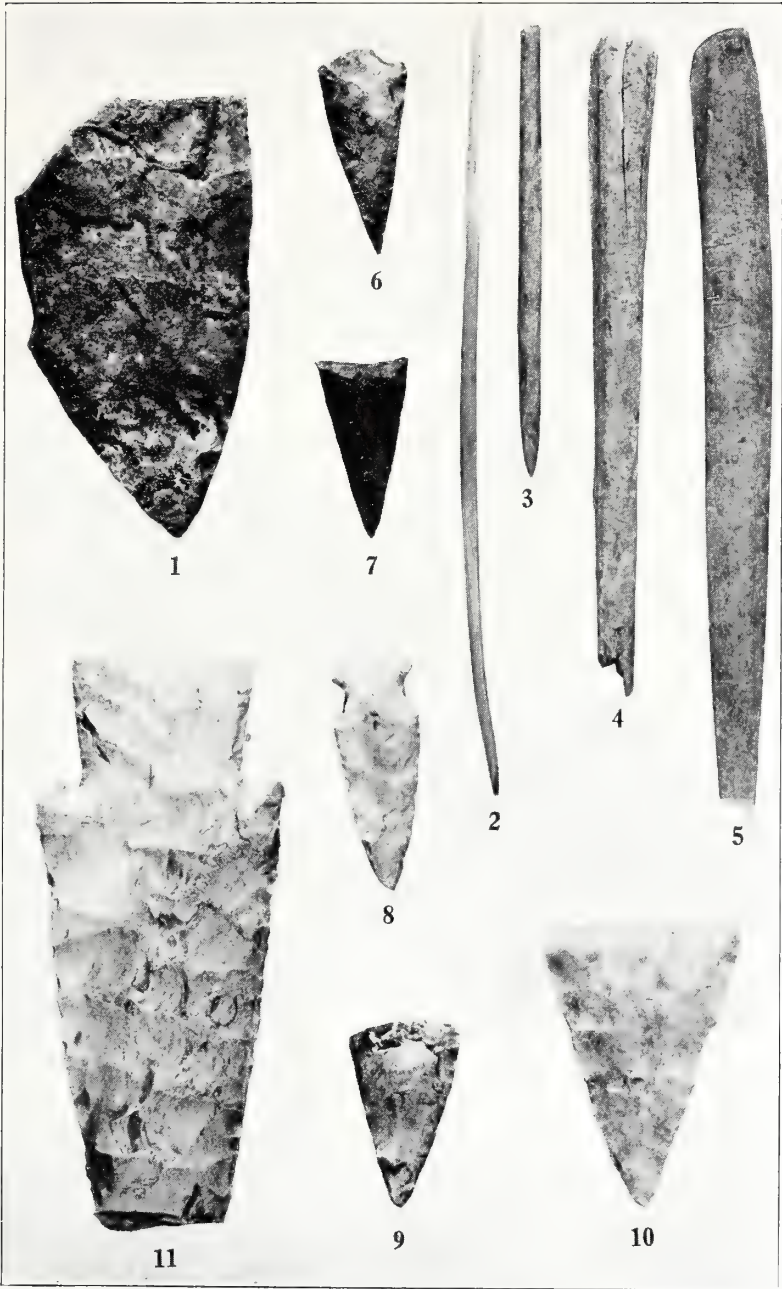


PLATE XXVIII

PLATE XXIX

Fig. 1.—Digging trench in Sawmill Mound. Fig. 2.—Skeleton No. 11, Sawmill Mound (A302).

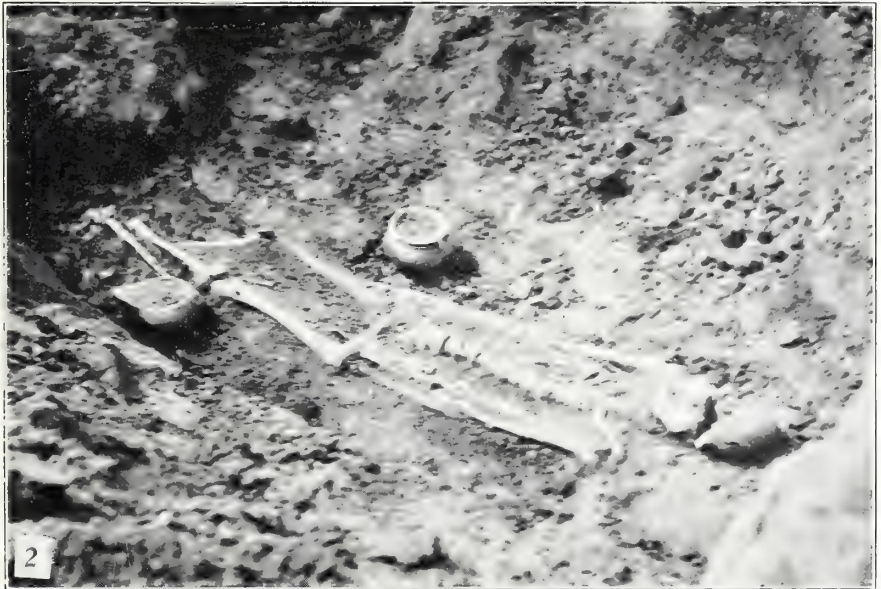


PLATE XXIX

PLATE XXX

Fig. 1.—Skeleton No. 12, from Mound No. 20 (A485). Fig. 2.—Circle in James Ramey Mound; also basins and circle of post holes.





PLATE XXX

PLATE XXXI

Fig. 1.—Trench in James Ramey Mound (No. 33). Note altar in center foreground at trowel. Fig. 2.—Skeletons in position, Mound No. 20. Fig. 3.—General view of circles in James Ramey Mound.



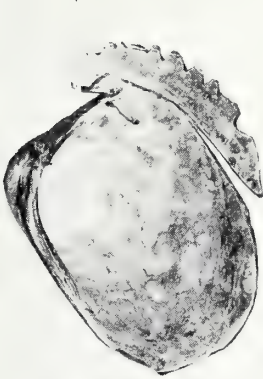
PLATE XXXI

PLATE XXXII

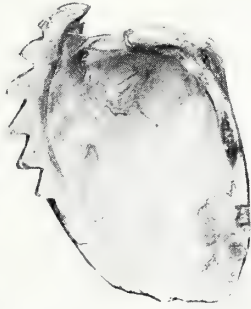
Fig. 1.—Bone awls and needles. Figs. 2-6.—Mussel shells (*Lampsilis ventricosa*); W. J. Seever collection. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  natural size). Fig. 7.—Hematite axe. Fig. 8.—Grooved axe; Monticello Seminary collection. Fig. 9.—Celt of porphyritic rock, Wells-Tippetts Village Site (A362). ( $\frac{1}{3}$  natural size.)



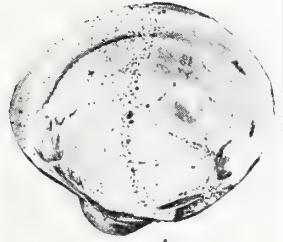
1



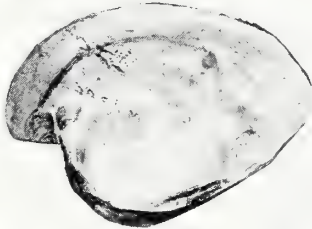
2



3



4



5



7



9



6



8

PLATE XXXIII

Figs. 1-5.—Five pipes, several of them effigies, from the Monticello Seminary collection. Figs. 6, 7.—Stone effigies; Monticello Seminary collection. Fig. 8.—Large effigy pipe; W. J. Seever collection. (See p. 98 for description.)

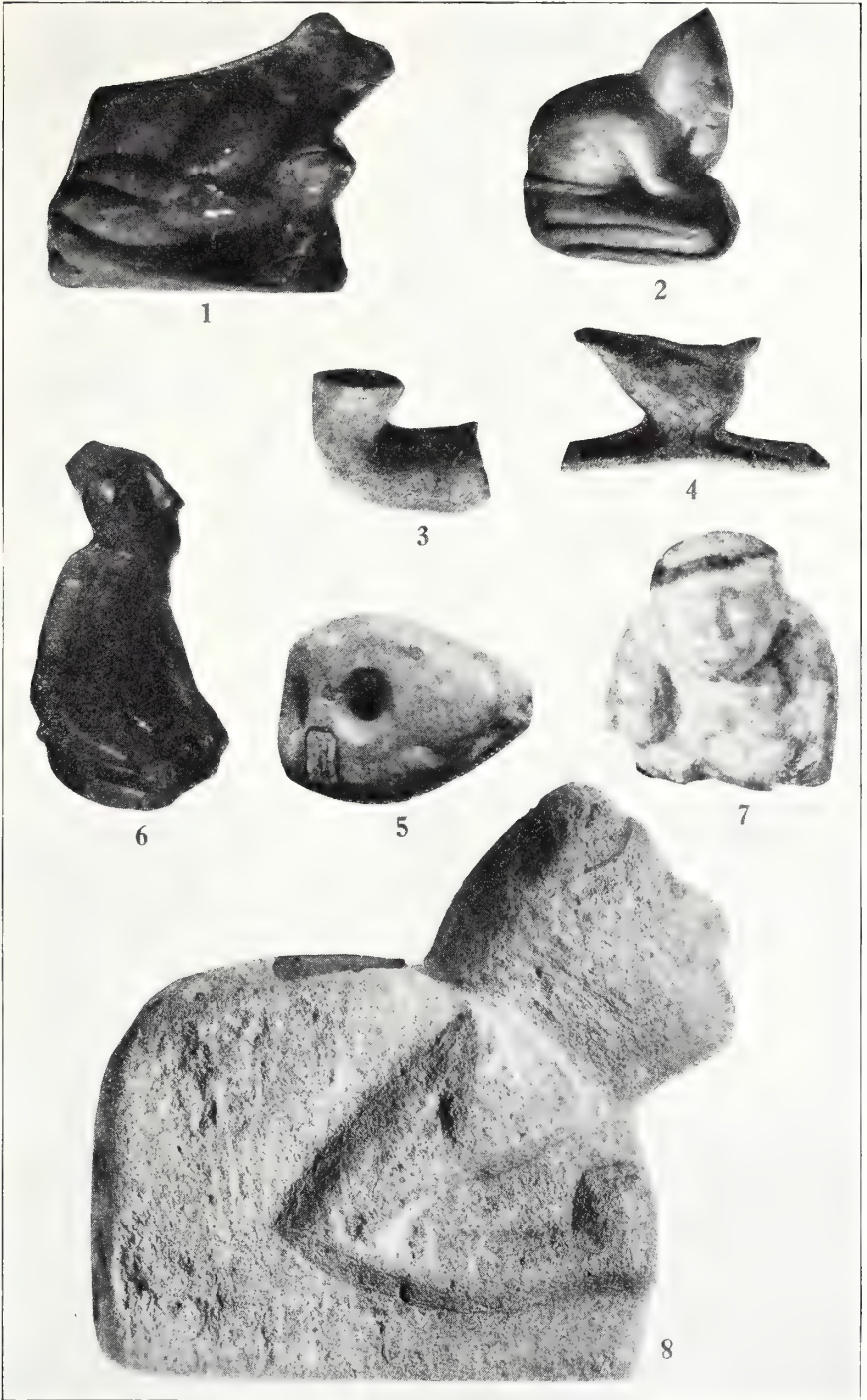


PLATE XXXIII

PLATE XXXIV

Fig. 1.—String of shell beads cut from busycon conch. Fig. 2.—Marine conch shell, *Busycon carica*. Fig. 3.—Marine conch shell, *Busycon perversa*. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  natural size.) Monticello Seminary collection. Fig. 4.—Arrowhead of quartz, unusual workmanship. (Natural size.) Found on the surface of Monks Mound.



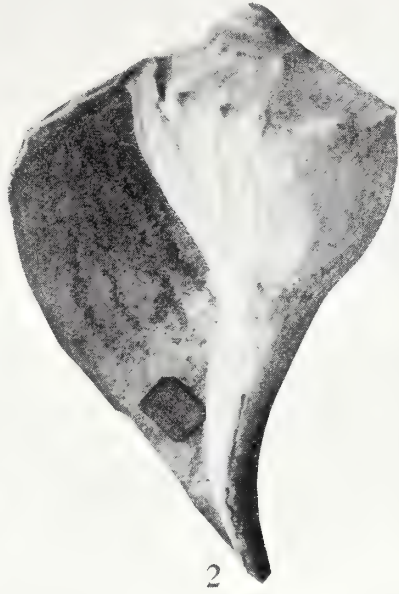


PLATE XXXIV

PLATE XXXV

Characteristic Cahokia motifs from the James Ramey Mound.

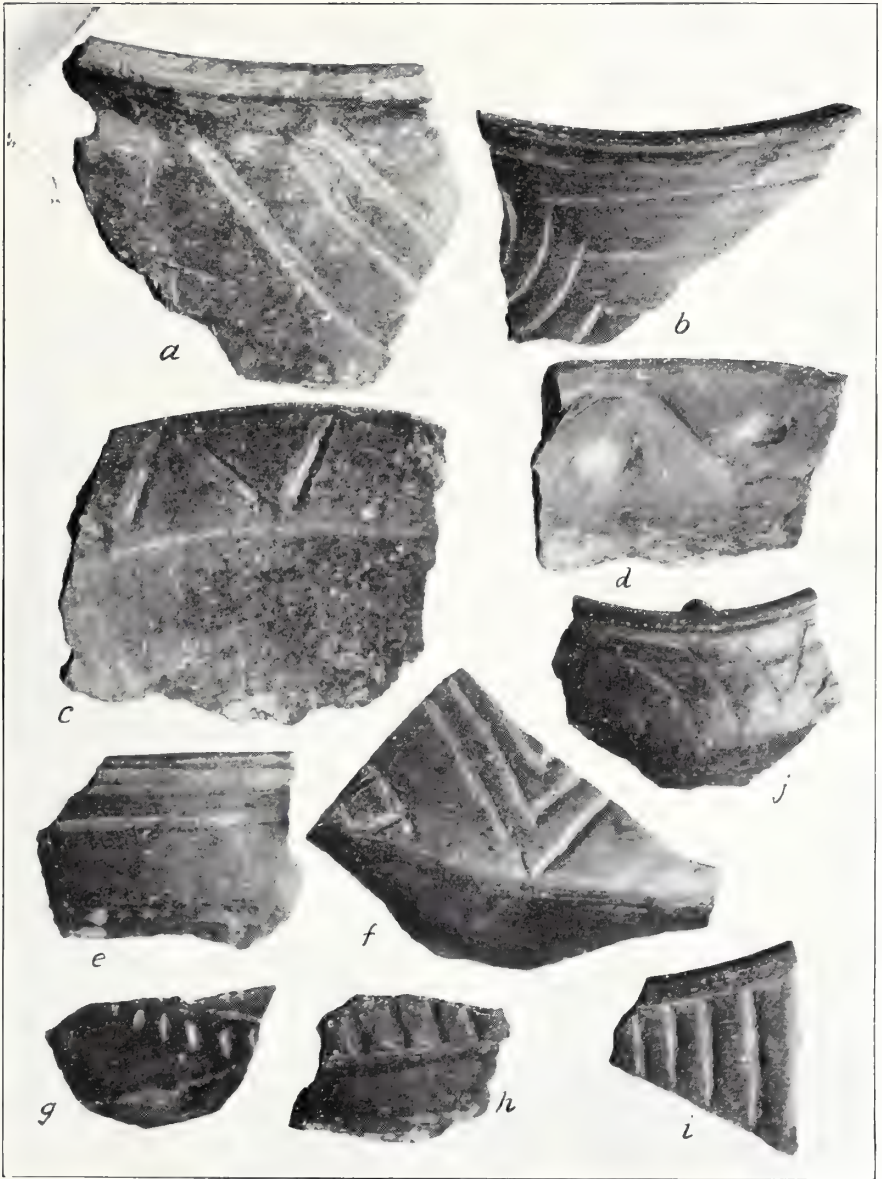
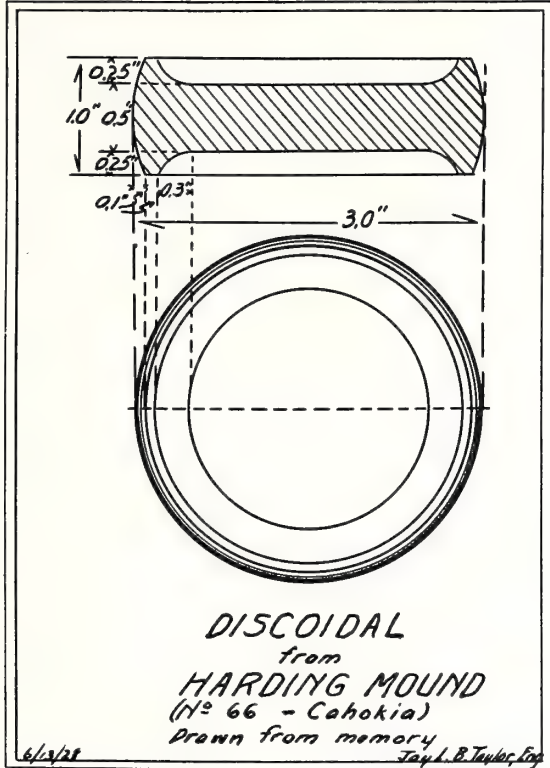


PLATE XXXV

PLATE XXXVI

The discoidal, or chunkee stone, found on the face of a skeleton in Section  
15-C of Mound No. 66.



6/12/28

PLATE XXXVI

PLATE XXXVII

Mound No. 66. Property of the Baltimore & Ohio Railroad Company.  
Camera 700 feet distant.



PLATE XXXVII

PLATE XXXVIII

Cross section of Mound No. 66 at Station 35, major axis.





PLATE XXXIX

The Powell Mound, from Taylor's photograph.

PLATE XL

Jar with serpent motif. Mound No. 6, Neteler.



PLATE XXXIX

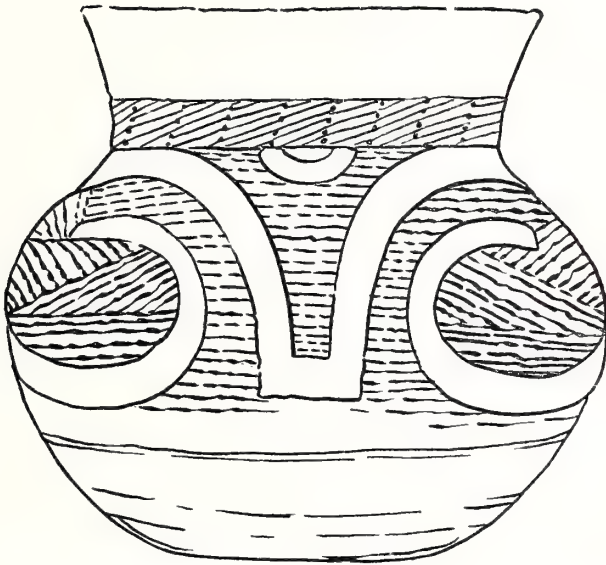


PLATE XL

PLATE XLI

Jar from the Neteler Mound, No. 6. Attention is called to the interesting decoration. The circles probably represent sun symbols.

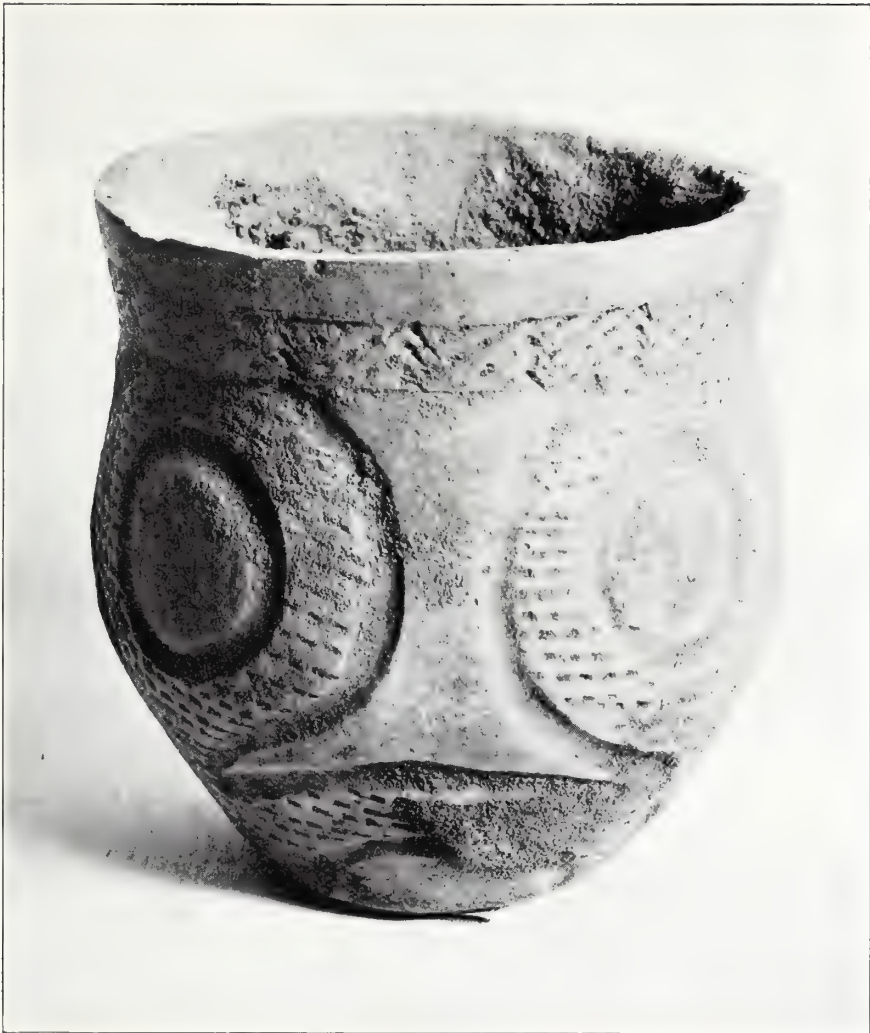


PLATE XLI

PLATE XLII

Four copper hatchets: The two upper hatchets are from Skeleton 6, Mound 6, Neteler farm, Havana; the smaller one at the extreme right is from Skeleton 5, Mound 6, Neteler farm; the one in the center, below, is from child's skeleton, No. 5, Mound No. 11, Chautauqua Park, Havana.



PLATE XLII

PLATE XLIII

Illustrating six bear tusks, two of which are split; three small copper hatchets and spearhead of agate-like flint from the Neteler Mound. See pp. 160, 161, 162.





PLATE XLIII

PLATE XLIV

Necklace of split bear tusks, Skeleton 6, Mound No. 6, Neteler. Nearly sixty  
of these were found, many decayed.



PLATE XLIV

PLATE XLV

Copper head-band and portions of two human jaws cut into ornaments, Mound No. 6, Neteler. The two objects at the lower right portion of the plate are wolf jaws taken from this mound.

PLATE XLVI

View of some skeletons *in situ* in the mound owned by Dr. Don F. Dickson, Lewistown, Illinois, also accompanying objects. See pp. 167 and 168. Photograph by Russell T. Neville, Kewanee, Ill.



PLATE XLV



PLATE XLVI

PLATE XLVII

Skeleton and objects in position. Dr. Don F. Dickson's Museum, Lewistown,  
Illinois. See pp. 167 and 168.

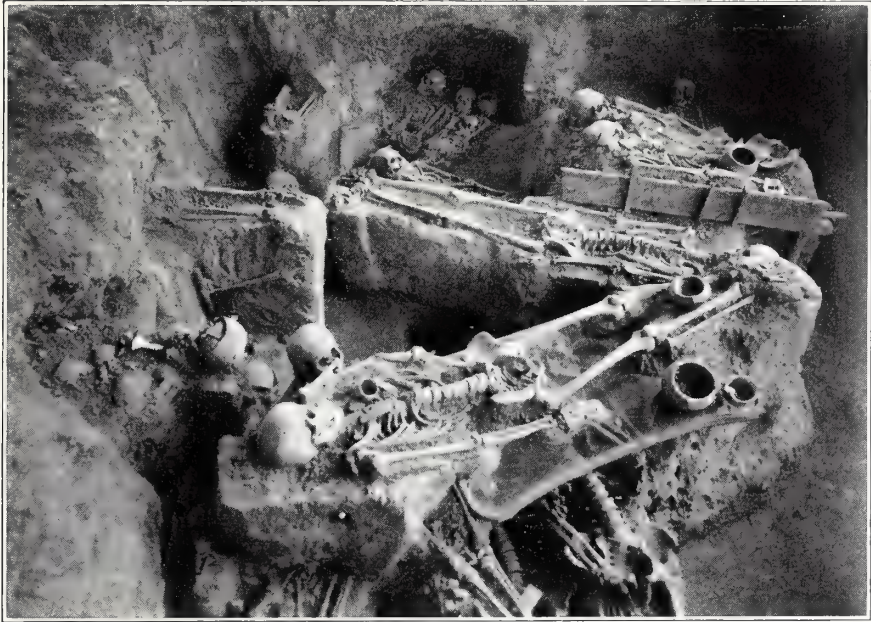


PLATE XLVII

PLATE XLVIII

Objects from the log tombs near Liverpool. Long bone daggers to left (12 to 16 ins.); pearl beads in center; imitation bear teeth in copper; copper axes and copper beads to the right. Dr. Don F. Dickson's collection.



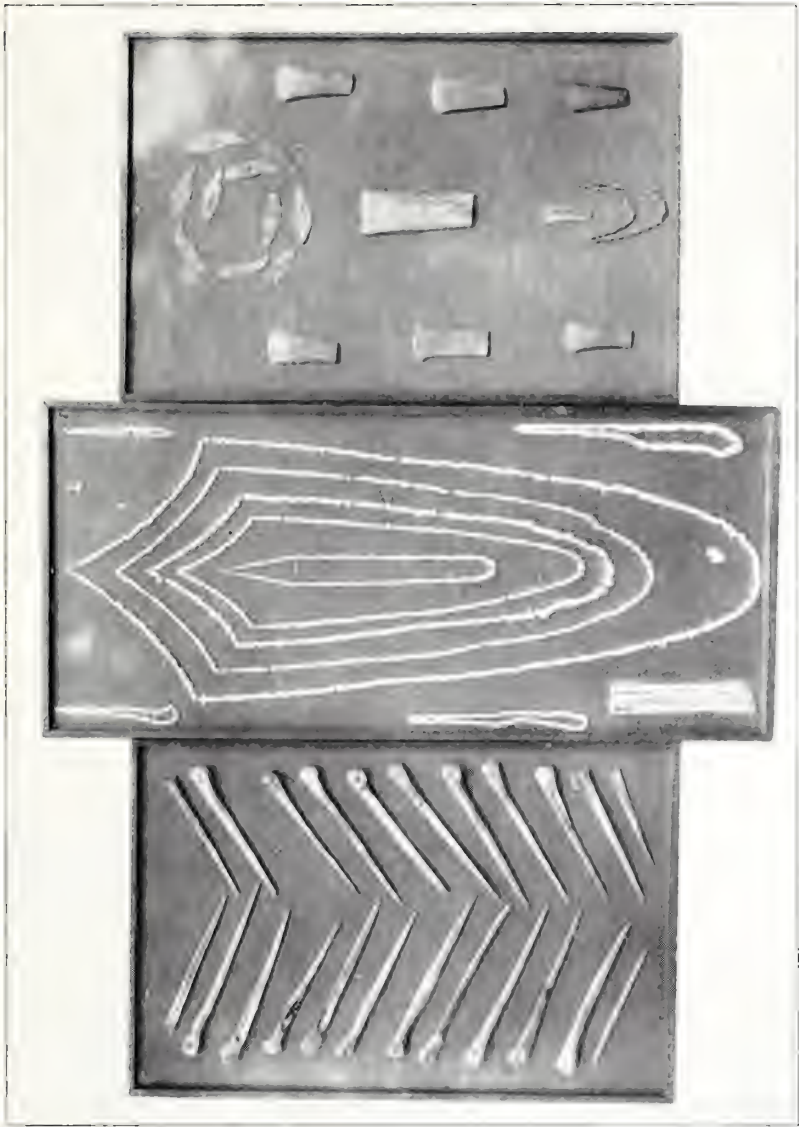
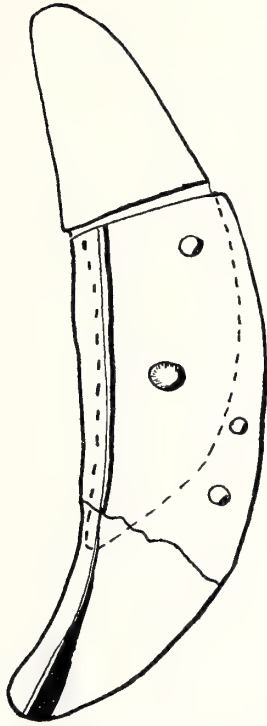


PLATE XLVIII

PLATE XLIX

Bone knife inserted in a grizzly bear tusk. A.—The knife in sheath. B.—The knife itself. Several perforations are shown in A. The tusk is unusually large. Found in the log tomb, Liverpool, Illinois. Dr. Don F. Dickson's Museum. See p. 169.



A



B

PLATE XLIX

PLATE L

Field map of Dickson's Cemetery.

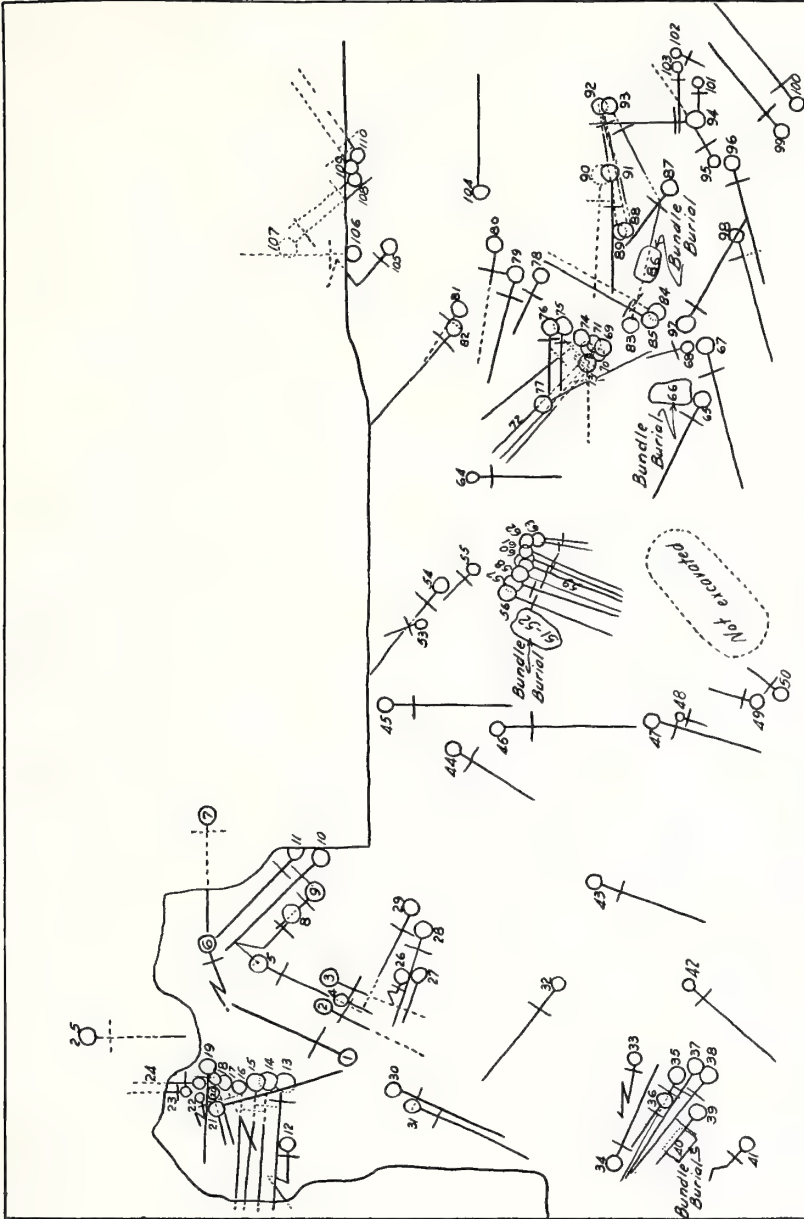


PLATE I











